UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

☒ **ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022

or

☐ **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the transition period from _____ to_____

Commission File Number: 001-39037

SMILEDIRECTCLUB, INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware	**83-4505317**
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)	(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)
414 Union Street **Nashville, TN** (Address of principal executive offices)	**37219** (Zip Code)

(800) 342-0462
(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Trading Symbol(s)	Name of each exchange on which registered
Class A common stock, par value $0.0001 per share	SDC	The NASDAQ Stock Market LLC

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act.
☐ Yes ☒ No

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. ☐ Yes ☒ No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. ☒ Yes ☐ No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§ 232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to submit such files). ☒ Yes ☐ No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer	☐	Accelerated filer	☒
Non-accelerated filer	☐	Smaller reporting company	☐
		Emerging growth company	☐

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has filed a report on and attestation to its management's assessment of the effectiveness of its internal control over financial reporting under Section 404 (b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act (15 U.S.C 7262(b)) by the registered public accounting firm that prepared or issued its audit report. ☒

If securities are registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act, indicate by check mark whether the financial statements of the registrant included in the filing reflect the correction of an error to previously issued financial statements. ☐

Indicate by check mark whether any of those error corrections are restatements that required a recovery analysis of incentive-based compensation received by any of the registrant's executive officers during the relevant recovery period pursuant to §240.10D-1(b). ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). ☐ Yes ☒ No

Aggregate market value of voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates of the Registrant, based on the closing price of $1.04 per share as reported on the NASDAQ Stock Market LLC on June 30, 2022 (the last business day of the Registrant's most recently completed second quarter): $122,373,913.

The registrant has the following number of shares outstanding of each of the registrant's classes of common stock as of February 24, 2023:

Class A Common Stock: 130,664,851
Class B Common Stock: 268,823,501

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The following documents are incorporated by reference herein:

Portions of the definitive Proxy Statement of SmileDirectClub, Inc. to be filed pursuant to Regulation 14A of the general rules and regulations under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, for the 2023 annual meeting of stockholders are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Form 10-K.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CAUTIONARY STATEMENT REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This Annual Report on Form 10-K of SmileDirectClub, Inc. ("SmileDirectClub," "Company," "us," "we," or "our") contains forward-looking statements. Any statements about our expectations, beliefs, plans, predictions, forecasts, objectives, assumptions, or future events or performance are not historical facts and may be forward-looking. These statements are often, but not always, made through the use of words or phrases such as "anticipates," "believes," "can," "could," "may," "predicts," "potential," "should," "will," "estimate," "plans," "projects," "continuing," "ongoing," "expects," "intends," and similar words or phrases. Although we believe that the expectations reflected in these forward-looking statements are reasonable, these statements are not guarantees of future performance and involve risks and uncertainties which are subject to change based on various important factors, some of which are beyond our control. For more information regarding these risks and uncertainties as well as certain additional risks that we face, refer to "*Risk Factors*" as well as the factors more fully described in "*Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Conditions and Results of Operations*" in this report. Among the factors that could cause our financial performance to differ materially from that suggested by the forward-looking statements are:

- our ability to effectively manage our core growth initiatives;
- our ability to effectively execute our business strategies, implement new initiatives, and improve efficiency;
- our sales and marketing efforts;
- our manufacturing capacity and performance and our ability to reduce the per unit production cost of our clear aligners;
- our ability to obtain and maintain regulatory approvals for any new or, enhanced or existing products;
- our estimates regarding revenues, expenses, capital requirements, and needs for additional financing;
- our ability to effectively market and sell, consumer acceptance of, and competition for our clear aligners in new markets;
- our relationships with retail partners and insurance carrier providers;
- our research, development, commercialization, and other activities and projected expenditures;
- changes or errors in the methodologies, models, assumptions, and estimates we use to prepare our financial statements, make business decisions, and manage risks;
- our current business model is dependent, in part, on current laws and regulations governing remote healthcare and the practice of dentistry, and changes in those laws, regulations, or interpretations that are inconsistent with our current business model could have a material adverse effect on our business;
- our relationships with our freight carriers, suppliers, and other vendors;
- our ability to maintain the security of our operating systems and infrastructure (e.g., against cyberattacks);
- the adequacy of our risk management framework;
- our cash needs, including with respect to our debt services requirements, and ability to raise additional capital, if needed;
- our ability to remain in compliance with our debt covenants;

- our intellectual property position;
- our exposure to claims and legal proceedings;
- our ability to manage the COVID-19 pandemic, including the protracted duration of COVID-19 and the potential resurgence of COVID-19 infections, through voluntary and regulatory containment measures and the related impacts on our business;
- our ability to gauge the impact of COVID-19 and related potential disruptions to the operations of our suppliers, freight carriers and retail partners, including social and economic constraints, tariffs and trade barriers, facilities closures, labor instability, and capacity reduction;
- our ability to manage macroeconomic pressures and increasing inflation on our core customer; and
- other factors and assumptions described in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

If one or more of the factors affecting our forward-looking information and statements proves incorrect, our actual results, performance or achievements could differ materially from those expressed in, or implied by, forward-looking information and statements. Therefore, we caution not to place undue reliance on any forward-looking information or statements. The effect of these factors is difficult to predict. Factors other than these also could adversely affect our results, and the reader should not consider these factors to be a complete set of all potential risks or uncertainties. New factors emerge from time to time, and management cannot assess the impact of any such factor on our business or the extent to which any factor, or combination of factors, may cause results to differ materially from those contained in any forward-looking statement. Any forward-looking statements only speak as of the date of this document, and we undertake no obligation to update any forward-looking information or statements, whether written or oral, to reflect any change, except as required by law. All forward-looking statements attributable to us are expressly qualified by these cautionary statements.

You should read this Annual Report on Form 10-K and the documents that we reference in this Annual Report on Form 10-K and have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") as exhibits to this Annual Report on Form 10-K with the understanding that our actual future results, levels of activity, performance, and events and circumstances may be materially different from what we expect.

PART I

Item 1. Business

Our Company

SmileDirectClub was founded on one simple belief: everyone deserves a smile they love.

We are an oral care company and the creator of the first medtech platform for teeth straightening. Through our cutting-edge teledentistry technology and vertically integrated model, we are revolutionizing the oral care industry, from clear aligner therapy to our affordable, premium oral care product line.

Our clear aligner treatment addresses the large and underserved global orthodontics market. We are a leading player in this massive opportunity, and we believe that our aligner treatment can help over 90% of people with mild to moderate malocclusion achieve a better smile.

Our vertically integrated model enables us to solve critical problems around cost, convenience, and access to care. We offer professional-level service and high-quality clear aligners generally at a cost of $2,050, up to 60% less than traditional orthodontic solutions. We achieve these cost savings while maintaining high quality by removing the overhead cost of multiple in-person doctor visits and managing the entire customer experience, all the way from marketing to aligner manufacturing, fulfillment, treatment by a customer's dentist or orthodontist, and facilitating remote clinical monitoring through completion of treatment, which is facilitated by our proprietary teledentistry platform. These efficiencies enable us to pass the cost savings directly to our customers and allow the dentists and orthodontists in our network to focus on what matters most: providing convenient access to excellent clinical care. To further democratize access to care, we offer customers the option of paying the entire cost of their treatment upfront or enrolling in our financing program, SmilePay, a convenient monthly payment plan. We also accept insurance and as of December 31, 2022, are in-network with UnitedHealthcare, Aetna, Anthem, Dominion National, Empire Blue Cross and MetLife, among others.

Our customer journey starts with any of several convenient options: a customer visits an office within our expanding collaborative model with the dentists and orthodontists in our existing network of affiliated dentists ("Partner Network"); books an appointment to receive a free, in-person 3D oral image of their teeth taken at any of our permanent SmileShops or popup locations across the U.S., Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, the U.K., and Ireland; visits our website and requests an easy-to-use, doctor-prescribed impression kit, which is shipped directly to the customer's home; or downloads the SmileDirectClub app to take an AI-driven 3D image of their teeth through which a customized treatment plan is created in minutes, now available in Australia and soon in other locations where SmileDirectClub operates. Using the image or impression, along with the other information collected from the customer, we create a preliminary custom treatment plan that demonstrates how the customer's teeth will move during treatment. Next, through our telehealth platform, an appropriately licensed doctor within our network reviews the information collected from the customer, and determines if the customer is appropriate for treatment and if so finalizes and approves the customer's treatment plan. If the customer is a good candidate for clear aligners and they decide to purchase, the licensed dentist or orthodontist issues the prescription for treatment and the manufacturing of the aligners. We then manufacture and ship the aligners directly to the customer. Through our telehealth platform, the treating doctor monitors the customer's progress, requests additional information and/or clearances from the customer, and communicates seamlessly with the customer over the course of treatment. We also offer a suite of complementary oral care products, such as whitening kits, toothbrushes, toothpaste, a water flosser, SmileSpa and a variety of other oral care products to maintain a perfect smile.

More About Our Customer Journey

Through our customer-centric platform, we have disrupted the traditional orthodontics industry, and in the process have helped over 1,900,000 customers and growing. Our proprietary technology and platform give customers the ability to receive clinically safe and effective treatment but without the 3-times markup of our primary competitor.

Customers start their journey by visiting our website or downloading our mobile app, where they can learn about how our process works, read first-hand reviews from other customers, and view before and after photos. Customers then proceed with their journey through one of the following convenient options:

- *In person at a Partner Network location:* A customer visits a dentist office or books an appointment online to take a free, in-person 3D oral image of their teeth at one of 900+ Partner Network locations.

- *In person at a SmileShop:* A customer can use our website to easily book an appointment to take a free, in-person 3D oral image at any of our popup locations or permanent SmileShops across the U.S., Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, the U.K., and Ireland. At the 30-minute appointment, one of our team members ("SmileGuides") uses a handheld oral camera that takes approximately 6,000 photos per second to create a highly detailed digital map of the customer's smile.

- *Remotely with our mobile app:* A customer may download our mobile app to take a 3D image of their teeth which is uploaded to our proprietary AI platform to generate a preliminary treatment plan and demonstrate how the customer's teeth may move and the length of time the treatment plan will take. The customer may then purchase their aligners, and visit a SmileShop for a final 3D scan or receive a doctor-prescribed impression kit shipped to their home, which is then returned to our facility for a final scan.

- *Remotely with an impression kit:* A customer may request an easy-to-use doctor prescribed impression kit online, which we ship directly to the customer pursuant to the prescription of a licensed doctor. Our impression kits are simple to use and can typically be completed by a customer within 30 minutes. The customer then returns their completed impression in a prepaid shipping box so that the impression can be scanned and digitized by our dental lab.

Once completed, the image or impression is used to create a digital map of the customer's mouth, which our trained technicians use to create a draft custom treatment plan that contains the clinical protocols for how the customer's teeth will move during treatment. The treatment plan is then sent to an appropriately licensed doctor in our network. Within 48 hours, the doctor reviews the treatment plan, together with the customer's oral photos, dental and health history, and chief complaint, and, where appropriate, approves the customer's clinical information and treatment plan and prescribes custom-made clear aligners. The appropriately licensed dentist may also request additional information before making any determination where required by international or state law or otherwise desired by the dentist, or reject the customer for treatment using our teledentistry platform.

At this point in the journey, we offer our customers two payment options to purchase the prescribed aligners: pay the full cost of treatment upfront or enroll in a convenient monthly payment plan that provides a flexible payment option to make our clear aligner treatment even more accessible ("SmilePay"). With a $250 down payment and an average monthly payment of only $89, SmilePay provides a more affordable option for those who cannot make the $2,050 full payment upfront.

Following a purchase, we manufacture and ship the full set of custom-made clear aligners directly to the customer. The average treatment lasts approximately six months. Once a customer begins treatment, the customer is required to upload photos and other information to our platform at least every 60 days for their treating doctor to review and order any touch-up aligners, as needed. In addition, we offer 24/7 access to care via our mobile app, website, chat, phone or email, and customers may request to connect with their treating doctor at any point in the journey and a video chat, phone or email touch base will be arranged.

As a testament to our confidence in the quality and efficacy of our product, we offer a Lifetime Smile Guarantee. Our Lifetime Smile Guarantee ensures a full refund if a customer is not satisfied for any reason within the first 30 days and a pro-rated refund, or additional aligners at no cost for further adjustment, if the customer is not satisfied at any point later in the process. As long as our customers are compliant with treatment protocols, we will guarantee their smile for life. We also offer a suite of complementary oral care products, such as whitening kits, toothbrushes, toothpaste, and other ancillary oral care products to maintain a perfect smile.

Throughout our customer journey, we are singularly focused on delivering an exceptional customer experience. We manage every customer touchpoint and communication, enabling us to continually refine and optimize the customer experience.

Our Strengths

We believe our strengths will allow us to maintain and extend our position as a leading clear aligner provider. Below is a summary of our key strengths:

Mission-driven brand with a positive customer experience

Our mission is to democratize access to a smile each and every person loves, and we strive to create the best possible experience doing so. Our commitment to a superior customer experience has produced an average net promoter score of 55 since inception. More than 66% of our customers surveyed are promoters of our SmileShop experience to friends and approximately 20% of our customers today come through referrals. We believe we enjoy the largest reach and presence on social media relative to our competitors, with over 665,000 likes on Facebook and over 478,000 followers on Instagram as of December 31, 2022. Clear aligners are a highly considered purchase, and our scale and customer satisfaction are important criteria that will enable us to maintain our position as the leading clear aligner provider.

Omni-channel presence with a large SmileShop and Partner Network footprint

With multiple options for customers to start their journey, we empower customers to choose how they would like to interact with us. If a customer chooses to order a doctor-prescribed impression kit, we will ship one directly to the customer. Alternatively, we have a network of over 125 SmileShops in the locations we operate, as well as partnerships with over 1,000 dental practices in our Partner Network across the U.S., Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, the U.K., France and Ireland, which provide an in-person experience to customers who prefer that channel.

Our SmileShop locations give our customers more convenient ways to access care. Furthermore, our SmileShops and Partner Network locations require little capital investment, with minimal upfront capital expenditure.

Exclusive licensed doctor network across all 50 U.S. states, Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, the U.K., France and Ireland

We have a network of over 200 orthodontists and general dentists across the U.S., Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, the U.K., France and Ireland, who are fully licensed across these jurisdictions to meet regulatory requirements, and we continue to successfully expand our doctor network to support our growth. In addition, we believe our domestic doctor network is sufficient to support our growth. The doctors in our network evaluate whether customers are viable candidates for clear aligner therapy and if they move forward with treatment, they are responsible for evaluating our customers' progress throughout treatment and are available to answer any questions should customers need additional assistance.

SmilePay captive financing increases accessibility and reduces purchasing friction

SmilePay is a key element to democratizing access to care and removing price as a limiting factor for our customers. As of December 31, 2022, approximately 60% of our customers have elected to purchase our clear aligners using SmilePay, which does not require a credit check. With SmilePay, a $250 down payment is required up front, which covers the cost of manufacturing the aligners. The remaining cost is financed over 26 months at an average monthly cost of $89 per month. For the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, we offered SmilePay at an APR of approximately 21% and 20%, respectively, which had an associated delinquency rate of approximately 11% and 9% of revenue for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively. We believe SmilePay, as a captive offering, reduces purchasing friction by removing the complex third-party financing process, resulting in higher conversion and a better overall customer experience.

Vertical integration powered by our proprietary teledentistry platform allows us to optimize every step of the customer journey

We are the first clear aligner company to build a scalable, integrated technology platform and doctor network for teledentistry. We manage the entire end-to-end process in a customer's journey, from the moment a customer visits the website or mobile app; all the way through aligner manufacturing, fulfillment, and treatment monitoring by a customer's doctor through completion of his or her treatment. Our proprietary platform supports rapid and efficient communication between our customers and their treating doctors, and the clinical and customer care teams.

Managing the customer journey from start to finish provides us with a comprehensive understanding of our customers and enables us to provide personalized, data-driven insights. It also enables us to quickly test and pilot new solutions and rapidly implement changes to our platform in order to deliver the best outcome for our customers and our business.

Our expertise in leveraging data and process engineering allows us to continually evolve how we interact with our customers.

Our Growth Strategy

Our mission is to provide everyone with a smile they love. We accomplish this by democratizing access to more affordable and convenient orthodontic care. We believe there is significant opportunity to further grow our customer base. We have helped over 1,900,000 customers out of a worldwide opportunity of approximately 500 million customers. We plan to grow by continuing to pursue the following key growth strategies:

Increase demand and conversion

Given that we have captured less than 1% of the total market opportunity, we plan to grow our customer base by continuing to focus our marketing efforts on the approximately 85% of people globally who have malocclusion.

Our process engineering expertise, along with our meticulous attention to each step of the customer experience, enables us to continually improve conversion at each of the hundreds of touchpoints throughout the customer journey. We have been able to accomplish these improvements in conversion through our customer relationship management ("CRM") strategies, educational efforts, technology advancements, and data-driven insights.

We see significant opportunity to continue increasing overall demand for our products and improving conversion at every touchpoint across our customer acquisition funnel.

Successfully target higher income customers

There are approximately 20 million annual world-wide case starts for traditional clear aligners and wires and brackets. We estimate that the average cost for these traditional cases is between $6,000 to $8,000, or approximately three times our offering at approximately $2,050. Given our relative price positioning in the market, we believe our growth has largely come from expanding the market by making teeth straightening more accessible to non-traditional, lower income consumers that would not typically be able to afford the $6,000 to $8,000 price of traditional teeth straightening offerings. We believe the higher income traditional consumer makes greater than $125,000 per year and presents a significant growth opportunity for us by successfully gaining share from traditional suppliers in the space.

Higher income consumers purchasing for teens represents the largest market opportunity for our brand. Teens are approximately 75% of case starts annually, but currently make up only approximately 7% of SmileDirectClub customers.

Creation of new aligner products and technology

In 2020, we launched our innovative Nighttime Clear Aligner product into the U.S. market and our international markets.

This proprietary new product, which requires only 10 hours of nightly wear, enables us to expand our market to customers who are unwilling or unable to wear aligners for the 22-hour daily wear cycle typically required with traditional clear aligner therapy.

In 2021, we launched our Comfort Sense technology featuring our patented laser technology that precision-cuts our aligners for a smoother fit, which, combined with the variable thicknesses of the aligners and doctor-prescribed and monitored treatment plans that start with lighter movements to ease customers into treatment, all results with a more comfortable fit and treatment for our customers. We also launched our new treatment planning system, SmileOS, in 2021. This next generation proprietary treatment planning software enables our network of appropriately licensed doctors to treat more patients, more accurately predict tooth movements, and better visualize their patients' treatments.

In 2023, we will launch our CarePlus aligner offering, which utilizes our growing Partner Network to offer customers the opportunity to begin their journey in the dentist's chair and continue their treatment through our teledentistry platform or have the opportunity to interact in person with their treating dentist when needed. The product is designed with the higher income customer and teen market in mind, delivering a hybrid approach to remote and in-person care at an affordable price and with a higher touch concierge-level of professional support than our traditional aligners. The CarePlus offering will be priced at $3,900 with a pilot program launching in the first quarter of 2023 and an anticipated further rollout in the second half of 2023.

This year will also see the global rollout of our innovative AI-driven SmileMaker Platform, which uses mobile technology to create an initial 3D image of the teeth and treatment plan, giving customers an instant preview of their aligner journey and treatment length, and condensing the path to purchase. This technology may be used for further applications to enable more precise monitoring of the teeth straightening process in the near future, driving the potential to deliver more precise tooth movement through more real time monitoring of the process as well as increased wear compliance and decreased need for mid-course corrections or refinements.

Expand reach through growth in the Professional Channel

In response to market demand and requests by dentists and orthodontists, we have focused and grown our collaborative model with the dentists and orthodontists in our existing network of affiliated dentists ("Partner Network"). The collaborative model enables patients who wish to start their customer journey in a regular dentist office to do just that. Their regular dentist's office will collect the same patient information that our SmileShops and popup locations collect for subsequent review and assessment by one of the dentists or orthodontists in our affiliated network. We currently have more than 1,000 affiliated dental practices in our Partner Network.

The Partner Network model not only expands on our commitment to customer convenience by allowing us to meet customers through the channel that makes sense for them but also allows us to improve our credibility with higher income customers. Higher income customers are more likely to seek a reference from a dental professional before deciding on a teeth straightening provider. Partner Network puts us directly in front of dental professionals allowing us to effectively educate and build credibility in the dental community, which deepens our foundation for future growth by improving our chances for success with higher income customers.

Retail partnerships and adjacent product expansions

Our business model introduces us to customers with a lifetime need for oral care. After treatment, our customers have a smile they are proud of and intent on maintaining. Because teeth are often prone to revert back to pre-treatment positioning, we offer our customers retainer options. In addition, customers after treatment are more interested in overall oral care and looking for products such as whitening and cleaning that help them protect the investment they made in their smile through treatment. These highly complementary offerings allow us to build a recurring revenue stream that furthers the investments we are making in our customers on the front end by expanding their lifetime value to us as a customer.

Oral care is a highly competitive space, so we remain focused on developing our brand of innovative products to drive

awareness, trial and repeat purchases through a diverse portfolio of differentiated oral care products. For instance, we have developed products to further penetrate the oral care market such as retainers, toothbrushes, toothpaste, water flosser, SmileSpa, lip balm, MoveMints, BrightOn premium whitening, and an LED accelerator light to address our customers' oral care needs, along with many other oral care products. We believe that our growing suite of products will lengthen our relationship with our customers and enhance our recurring stream of revenue.

In February 2022, we launched our Sensitivity Whitening Kit, broadening our award-winning whitening portfolio by introducing a product designed for those with sensitive teeth. In 2022, we announced the launch of our Fast-Dissolving Whitening Strips. Our whitening strips compete directly with the largest platform in the whitening category. In addition, we launched the first-to-market Stain Barrier pen that is a proactive treatment to help shield against staining beverages such as coffee, tea, and wine. These launches effectively further the brand's reputation as an innovative oral care provider with products that are designed to meet the customer's needs.

As our brand continues to grow through innovative new product launches, we anticipate the customer relationships we have developed through oral care will transfer over to teeth straightening when the customer is ready to start their journey.

Leverage data science and technology

With over 1,900,000 customers helped to date, we have one of the largest repositories of data in the oral care sector. Using this data and artificial intelligence, along with other technologies, we believe we can enhance our existing offerings, improve our manufacturing, and produce new products. We will leverage this same information and technology to enhance our products and to develop and introduce new products.

Expand Business Partnerships

We are party to standard in-network insurance coverage agreements with UnitedHealthcare, Aetna, Anthem, Dominion National, Empire Blue Cross and MetLife, among others, to include coverage for our aligners on an in-network basis, which means our customers who participate in these plans can obtain treatment at a lower out-of-pocket cost, after insurance coverage and negotiated discounts, and do not need to retroactively submit for reimbursement. These agreements have decreased the upfront cost to our customers and further streamline the complete revenue cycle management process, from eligibility check to payment posting. We are currently negotiating with other large insurance companies for similar arrangements. In addition, we are currently negotiating other business partnerships, such as corporate SmileDays and corporate discount programs, among others.

Sales and Marketing

Our management team has substantial experience successfully marketing direct-to-consumer brands. We market our aligners and other products through an omni-channel approach supported by media mix modeling ("MMM"). Our marketing approach focuses on both offline activities such as television and online digital marketing as well as campaigns directly targeted at the higher income customer market.

Treatment Plan Design and Aligner Manufacturing

We produce customized aligners based on a doctor's review of a customer's dental and health history, chief concern, photographs, and a 3D image of the customer's mouth resulting from receiving a digital scan or physical impression. To produce the customized aligners, we have developed a number of proprietary processes and technologies, including complex software solutions, laser, destructive and white light scanning techniques, stereolithography, 3D printing, and thermoforming. Our manufacturing is performed by Access Dental Lab, LLC, our wholly owned subsidiary.

Treatment plan design

Customers have the option of booking an appointment to take a free, in-person 3D oral image at any of our Partner Network locations, SmileShops or popup locations, where one of our SmileGuides uses a handheld oral camera that takes approximately 6,000 photos per second to create a highly detailed digital map of the customer's smile, or requesting one of our easy-to-use impression kits online and returning their completed impression to our manufacturing facility, or visit a dentist participating in our collaborative model network to obtain a free, 3D oral scan or have physical impressions taken. Our trained technicians then use the image or impression to create a draft custom treatment plan that contains the clinical protocols for how the customer's teeth will move during treatment. The rules that govern the clinical protocols are contained within our proprietary software that is specifically designed for our aligners. Lastly, prior to a locally licensed dentist in our network reviewing the case, all treatment plans go through a quality review with our doctors in Costa Rica.

Initial treatment plan design is conducted primarily at our facilities in San Jose, Costa Rica. Costa Rica's status as one of the Americas' leading nations for dental education and expertise enables us to recruit and employ highly qualified personnel in our treatment plan setup facilities.

After the treatment plan has been designed, a dentist or orthodontist licensed in the customer's state, or appropriate international jurisdiction, as the case may be, reviews the customer's oral photos, dental and health history, chief concern, treatment plan, and, when required or deemed appropriate by the treating doctor, x-rays or other bone imaging suitable for orthodontia, to make an independent initial determination of the customer's suitability for clear aligner treatment. The treating doctor can then approve the treatment plan and prescribe the customer's clear aligners, request additional information from the customer or clearances from the customer's dentist prior to making a determination on treatment, decline the customer as a candidate for clear aligners, typically due to an oral health concern or the complexity of the case, or return it to the treatment plan setup team for specified adjustments prior to final approval.

Lastly, we have an extensive team responsible for reviewing every aligner that is manufactured prior to shipping and maintaining compliance with U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the "FDA") and other applicable regulations to help ensure a high level of quality in our final product.

Aligner manufacturing

Our aligners are manufactured at our facilities in Antioch, Tennessee, where we employ approximately 400 team members. Every order is custom made, and we believe the complexity inherent in producing our highly customized aligners in large volumes is a barrier to potential competitors. We continue to make significant advances in manufacturing automation to improve quality and reduce cost, and we expect to automate additional manufacturing functions in the future.

We have agreements with the suppliers of the raw materials needed to manufacture our aligners and for the putty used in our at-home impression kits. We also rely on a third party to assemble and distribute our at-home impression kits. There are alternative suppliers available for all raw materials we require and our supply agreements specifically provide for our ability to purchase from these alternate sources if our preferred suppliers are not capable of meeting demand. We also have the ability to secure additional manufacturing from other sources, if required.

Doctor Network

We have a proprietary network of more than 200 appropriately licensed orthodontists and general dentists across the U.S., Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, the U.K., France and Ireland. We recruit doctors with the appropriate licenses across jurisdictions to meet regulatory requirements and continue to expand our network to support our growth. In addition to being in good standing in the jurisdictions where each doctor is licensed to practice dentistry, doctors in our network must have at least 4 years' experience in treating patients with clear aligner therapy in a traditional bricks and mortar setting. Doctors in our network review customer records, evaluate candidacy for treatment, review, refine and approve treatment plans, prescribe clear aligners, communicate with customers, review case progress, order any necessary treatment plan modifications, and are

available to answer any questions should customers need additional assistance. As we expand, we will expand our doctor network with appropriately licensed professionals.

Comprehensive Customer Care

We provide comprehensive 24/7 customer care to our customers through a variety of communication channels, including our website, video, phone, chat, email and social media as well as self-guided resources such as knowledge-based and how-to videos and articles on our website. We have a dedicated team of approximately 300 customer care team members in Nashville and Costa Rica, including general customer care team members, an advanced customer care team to address more complex questions, and a clinical customer care team of certified dental professionals available to answer clinical questions. In addition, each customer's treating doctor is available to answer clinical questions as needed or when requested by the customer or the treating doctor.

We believe that providing timely, responsive support and educational content to our customers helps foster an ongoing engagement that builds loyalty to our brand and also enables us to understand customer needs as they evolve. Our customer community serves as an efficient and engaging platform through which we can deliver customer care and receive feedback from customers. We gather and analyze user feedback from all platforms to help inform our design and engineering teams on future enhancements to our products and services. As our customer base grows in new geographies, we will continue to focus on building a scalable support infrastructure that enables our customers to engage with us through the channel that is most convenient and efficient for their needs.

SmileCheck

Our customer data is stored in our SmileCheck platform, a proprietary data repository for medical records, business transactions, and customer communications. SmileCheck supports rapid uniform access to, and use of, customer information across any internet-connected device.

From a customer's standpoint, SmileCheck powers a user-friendly online portal that allows for easy remote access to treatment plan information, SmilePay account details and communications on a convenient, integrated platform that can be accessed whenever and wherever customers choose. SmileCheck facilitates real-time, remote sharing of treatment data between our customers and their treating doctors, thus avoiding inconvenient, in-person doctor visits. In lieu of in-person visits, customers are required to upload dental photos to SmileCheck at least every 60 days, in addition to other information, so that their treating doctor may review their progress.

Our doctor network also uses SmileCheck for case assignment and management. Our software automatically connects each customer's case to a doctor licensed in that customer's state, or appropriate international jurisdiction, as the case may be. Once a case is accepted by the appropriate doctor, that doctor is able to study the customers' records, request additional information and/or clearances, review, refine, and approve treatment plans, prescribe clear aligners, communicate with customers, assess case progress and order any necessary treatment plan modifications, all via SmileCheck.

Research and Development

We have a research and development team with medical device development, dental/orthodontic, data science and other innovation focused backgrounds. Our research and development efforts are primarily focused on new product development for orthodontic and ancillary oral care products as well as data science and manufacturing automation.

Intellectual Property

We have more than 40 issued U.S. patents, and numerous pending U.S. and global patent applications. These patents and applications cover critical aspects of our process, including impression kit design, the SmileShop process, our Partner Network model, other systems, methods, and devices that facilitate the capture of customer images and data, certain key

aspects of SmileOS, manufacturing automation and process, and our SmileCheck software, and they also cover our innovative oral care product offerings. Our issued U.S. patents expire from 2037 to 2041.

We have more than 50 issued U.S. trademark registrations, and 13 pending U.S. trademark applications. We also own over 300 issued foreign trademark registrations and over 100 additional foreign trademark applications currently pending in various jurisdictions worldwide. Collectively, our global trademark filings cover our SMILE DIRECT CLUB® house marks for use in connection with a wide variety of goods and services related to our business, as well secondary marks and slogans.

We continue to pursue further intellectual property protection through U.S. and non-U.S. patent applications, trademark applications, and non-disclosure and non-compete agreements. We also seek to protect our software, documentation and other written materials under trade secret and copyright laws. There can be no assurance that patents will be issued as a result of any patent application or that patents that have been issued to us or may issue in the future will be found to be valid and enforceable and sufficient to protect our technology or products. Information regarding risks associated with failing to protect our proprietary technology and our intellectual property rights may be found in Item 1A of this Annual Report on Form 10-K under the heading "Risk Factors."

Seasonality

Our business does not experience material seasonality fluctuations in the results of our operations and cash flow needs throughout the year. However, we do increase our marketing spend at certain periods of the year, such as the first quarter of the calendar year, when customers typically have a higher focus on aesthetics, and we experience corresponding increases in website traffic and SmileShop bookings as a result of these increased marketing efforts.

Competition

We compete with a handful of smaller companies that collectively have limited market share in the clear aligner industry. With the introduction of our collaborative and wholesale partner network, we also compete with more well-established companies in the traditional orthodontic industry such as Align Technology, Inc. We believe that the principal competitive factors and what makes us stand out in the market for orthodontic appliances include:

- Credibility: Each individual treatment plan is prescribed, directed, and managed by an appropriately licensed doctor who we require to have a minimum of four years of experience in clear aligner therapy in a traditional setting.
- Certainty: Delivering a new smile in as little as four to six months protected by our Lifetime Smile Guarantee.
- Comfort: Our aligners are made using Comfort Sense ™ technology, which utilizes soft, medium, and firm plastics to safely and gradually shift your teeth.
- Convenience: Offering a 22-hour daily wear aligner or our Nighttime Clear Aligner treatment plan to fit our customers' lifestyle with multiple ways to get started - at a SmileShop or popup location, with a Partner Network dentist or from home with our mobile app or a doctor-prescribed impression kit.
- Cost: Offering the smile of your dreams without the 3 times the markup with an easy one-time payment or convenient monthly payments.

We believe that these differentiating factors allows us to compete favorably with respect to each of these factors.

Regulatory Matters

Our aligners, retainers, impression kits and some of our oral care products are considered medical devices and, accordingly, are subject to rigorous regulation by government agencies in the U.S. and other countries in which we sell our products. Compliance with these rigorous regulations will affect capital expenditures, earnings and the competitive position

of the Company. These regulations vary from country to country but cover, among other things, the following activities with respect to medical devices:

- design, development and manufacturing;
- testing, labeling, content and language of instructions for use and storage;
- product storage and safety;
- marketing, sales and distribution;
- pre-market clearance and approval;
- record keeping procedures;
- advertising and promotion;
- recalls and field safety corrective actions;
- post-market surveillance;
- post-market approval studies; and
- product import and export.

FDA regulation

In the U.S., numerous laws and regulations govern the processes by which medical devices are developed, manufactured, brought to market and marketed. These include the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act ("FD&C Act") and its implementing regulations issued by the FDA, among others. Unless an exemption applies, each medical device commercially distributed in the United States requires FDA clearance of a 510(k) premarket notification ("510(k) clearance"), granting of a *de novo* request, or approval of an application for premarket approval ("PMA''). In general, under the FD&C Act, medical devices are classified in one of three classes on the basis of the controls necessary to reasonably assure their safety and effectiveness. A medical device's classification determines the level of FDA review and approval to which the device is subject before it can be marketed to consumers:

- Class I devices, the lowest-risk FDA device classification, include devices with the lowest risk to the patient and are those for which safety and effectiveness can be assured by adherence to FDA's medical device general controls, including labeling, establishment registration, device product listing, adverse event reporting, and, for some products, adherence to good manufacturing practices through FDA's Quality System Regulations.

- Class II devices, moderate-risk devices, also require compliance with general controls and in some cases, special controls as deemed necessary by FDA to ensure the safety and effectiveness of the device. These special controls may include performance standards, particular labeling requirements, or post-market surveillance obligations. While most Class I devices are exempt from the 510(k) premarket notification requirement, typically a Class II device also requires pre-market review and 510(k) clearance as well as adherence to the Quality System Regulations/good manufacturing practices for devices.

- Class III devices, high-risk devices that are often implantable or life-sustaining, also require compliance with the medical device general controls and Quality System Regulations, and generally must be approved by FDA before entering the market through a PMA application. Approved PMAs can include post-approval conditions and post-

market surveillance requirements, analogous to some of the special controls that may be imposed on Class II devices.

Our manufacturing quality system is required to be in compliance with the Quality System Regulations enforced by FDA and similar regulations enforced by other worldwide regulatory authorities. FDA's Quality System Regulations require manufacturers to follow stringent design, testing, process control, documentation, and other quality assurance procedures.

Our retainers and majority of oral care products are Class I devices, which may be marketed in the U.S. without premarket clearance or approval by FDA and are subject to general controls, including labeling, establishment registration, and adherence to good manufacturing practices through FDA's Quality System Regulations.

We market our clear aligner products in the U.S. pursuant to 510(k) clearance as they are a Class II medical device. The manufacture, marketing and distribution of our aligners and other medical device products are subject to continuing regulation and enforcement by FDA and other government authorities, which includes routine FDA inspections of our facilities to determine compliance with facility registration requirements, product listing requirements, medical device reporting regulations, and Quality System Regulations, among others. If FDA finds that we have failed to comply with Quality System Regulations or other legal or regulatory requirements, it or other government agencies may institute a wide variety of enforcement actions against us, ranging from Warning Letters to more severe sanctions, including but not limited to financial penalties, withdrawal of 510(k) clearances already granted, and criminal prosecution. We continue to hold our International Organization for Standardization ("ISO") 13485 and Medical Device Single Audit Program ("MDSAP") certifications, with Canada, United States, and Australia within the scope of our MDSAP certification.

The 510(k) process

Under the 510(k) process, the manufacturer must submit to FDA a premarket notification demonstrating that the device is "substantially equivalent" to either a device that was legally marketed prior to May 28, 1976, the date upon which the Medical Device Amendments of 1976 were enacted, and for which a PMA is not required, a device that has been reclassified from Class III to Class II or Class I, or another commercially available device that was cleared through the 510(k) process. To be "substantially equivalent," the proposed device must have the same intended use as the predicate device, and either have the same technological characteristics as the predicate device or have different technological characteristics and not raise different questions of safety or effectiveness than the predicate device. Clinical data is sometimes required to support substantial equivalence.

After a 510(k) premarket notification is submitted, FDA determines whether to accept it for substantive review. If it lacks necessary information for substantive review, FDA will refuse to accept the 510(k) notification. If it is accepted for filing, FDA begins a substantive review. By statute, FDA is required to complete its review of a 510(k) notification within 90 days of receiving the 510(k) notification. As a practical matter, clearance often takes longer, and clearance is never assured. FDA may require further information, including clinical data, to make a determination regarding substantial equivalence, which may significantly prolong the review process. If FDA agrees that the device is substantially equivalent to a predicate device currently on the market, it will grant 510(k) clearance to commercially market the device.

Post-market regulation

After a device is cleared or approved for marketing, numerous and extensive regulatory requirements may continue to apply. These include but are not limited to:

- annual and updated establishment registration and device listing with FDA;
- Quality System Regulation requirements, which require manufacturers to follow stringent quality assurance procedures during all aspects of the design and manufacturing process;
- restrictions on sale, distribution, or use of a device;

- labeling, advertising, promotion, and marketing regulations, which require that promotion is truthful, not misleading, and provide adequate directions for use and that all claims are substantiated, and also prohibit the promotion of products for unapproved or "off-label" uses and impose other restrictions on labeling;

- clearance or approval of product modifications to legally marketed devices that could significantly affect safety or effectiveness or that would constitute a major change in intended use;

- medical device reporting regulations, which require that a manufacturer report to FDA if a device it markets may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury, or has malfunctioned and the device or a similar device that it markets would be likely to cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if the malfunction were to recur;

- correction, removal, and recall reporting regulations, and FDA's recall authority;

- complying with the federal law and regulations requiring Unique Device Identifiers on devices; and

- post-market surveillance activities and regulations, which apply when deemed by FDA to be necessary to protect the public health or to provide additional safety and effectiveness data for the device.

FDA has broad regulatory compliance and enforcement powers. If FDA determines that we failed to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, it can take a variety of compliance or enforcement actions, which may result in any of the following sanctions:

- warning letters, untitled letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees, and civil penalties;

- recalls, withdrawals, or administrative detention, or seizure of our products;

- operating restrictions or partial suspension or total shutdown of production;

- refusing or delaying requests for 510(k) marketing clearance or PMA approvals of new products or modified products;

- withdrawing 510(k) clearances or PMA approvals that have already been granted;

- refusal to grant export or import approvals for our products; or

- criminal prosecution.

International regulation

The Canadian Food and Drugs Act, and the Medical Device Regulations issued thereunder, provide for regulation by Health Canada of the manufacture, labeling, packaging, distribution, sale, and advertisement of medical devices. Our aligners are regulated as a Class II medical device under the Canadian Medical Device Regulations, which require, among other things, that Class II medical device manufacturers selling medical devices hold a medical device establishment license and file various reports. We received our Canadian ISO/MDSAP certification in March 2019. In light of our ISO/MDSAP certification, we believe that we are in substantial compliance with applicable Canadian regulations and do not anticipate having to make any material expenditures as a result of Health Canada or other currently applicable regulatory requirements. Under Canadian regulation, manufacturing facilities are subject to periodic inspections by regulatory authorities and must comply with device safety and effectiveness requirements as required by the Medical Devices Regulations and Health Canada. To that end, we have implemented controls and procedures intended to ensure that our Access Dental Lab Quality System meets FDA's and Health Canada's requirements. We continue to hold our ISO 13485 and MDSAP certifications, with Canada, United States, and Australia within the scope of our MDSAP certification.

There is currently no premarket government review of medical devices in the European Economic Area (“EEA’’). However, all medical devices placed on the market in the EEA must meet the relevant essential requirements laid down in Annex I of Directive 93/42/EEC concerning medical devices, or the Medical Devices Directive. The most fundamental essential requirement is that a medical device must be designed and manufactured in such a way that it will not compromise the clinical condition or safety of patients, or the safety and health of users and others. In addition, the device must achieve the performances intended by the manufacturer and be designed, manufactured, and packaged in a suitable manner. The European Commission has adopted various standards applicable to medical devices. These include standards governing common requirements, such as sterilization and safety of medical electrical equipment, and product standards for certain types of medical devices. There are also harmonized standards relating to design and manufacture. While not mandatory, compliance with these standards is viewed as the easiest way to satisfy the essential requirements as a practical matter. Compliance with a standard developed to implement an essential requirement also creates a rebuttable presumption that the device satisfies that essential requirement.

In the U.K. and EEA, our aligners and retainers are considered Class I custom made medical devices and are not required to have a Conformité Européene (“CE”) mark certification acknowledging conformity with health and safety protection standards for sales of those products into the U.K. and the EEA. We have a CE mark for sales of our impression kits into the U.K. and EEA.

On April 5, 2017, the European Parliament passed the Medical Devices Regulation (Regulation 2017/745), which repeals and replaces the E.U. Medical Device Directive and became effective on May 26, 2021. The Medical Devices Regulation, among other things, is intended to establish a uniform, transparent, predictable, and sustainable regulatory framework across the EEA for medical devices and ensure a high level of safety and health while supporting innovation. It is possible under the new Medical Devices Regulation that our aligners could be deemed mass-produced rather than custom-made devices in which event we would need to apply for a CE mark for our aligners. Once applicable, the new regulations will, among other things:

- strengthen the rules on placing devices on the market and reinforce surveillance once they are available;
- establish explicit provisions on manufacturers’ responsibilities for the follow-up of the quality, performance, and safety of devices placed on the market;
- improve the traceability of medical devices throughout the supply chain to the end-user or patient through a unique identification number;
- set up a central database to provide patients, healthcare professionals, and the public with comprehensive information on products available in the E.U.; and
- strengthen rules for the assessment of certain high-risk devices, such as implants, which may have to undergo an additional check by experts before they are placed on the market.

In Australia, our retainers and aligners are considered custom-made medical devices and are exempt from inclusion in the Australian Register of Therapeutic Goods (‘‘ARTG”), although we have submitted our notification to be listed on the ARTG, so that we have the right to ship those products into Australia and New Zealand. Impression kits are considered Class I devices in Australia and New Zealand, and we are registered and listed with these countries to ship impression kits to our customers there.

Quality System Regulations

Our manufacturing quality system is required to be in compliance with the Quality System Regulations enforced by FDA and similar regulations enforced by other worldwide regulatory authorities. FDA’s Quality System Regulations require manufacturers to follow stringent design, testing, process control, documentation, and other quality assurance procedures. If

FDA finds that we have failed to comply with Quality System Regulations or other legal or regulatory requirements, it or other government agencies may institute a wide variety of enforcement actions against us, ranging from Warning Letters to more severe sanctions, including but not limited to financial penalties, withdrawal of 510(k) clearances already granted, and criminal prosecution. In addition, under Canadian regulation, manufacturing facilities are subject to periodic inspections by regulatory authorities and must comply with device safety and effectiveness requirements as required by the Medical Devices Regulations and Health Canada. To that end, we have implemented controls and procedures intended to ensure that our Access Dental Lab Quality System meets requirements enforced by FDA, Health Canada, and other worldwide regulatory authorities. We have an extensive Quality Assurance team at Access Dental Lab.

State professional regulation

Our ability to conduct business in each state is dependent in part upon that particular state's treatment of remote healthcare delivery under such state's laws, rules and policies governing the practice of dentistry, which are subject to changing political, regulatory and other influences. Orthodontists and dentists who provide professional services to a patient via teledentistry must, in most instances, hold a valid license to practice or to provide treatment in the state in which the patient is located. In addition, certain states require an orthodontist or dentist providing teledentistry services to be physically located in the same state as the patient. Failure to comply with these laws and regulations can give rise to civil or criminal penalties.

We have been successful in working with several state dental boards in creating teledentistry rules and regulations which support our model. In addition, more than 20 state dental boards have affirmatively rejected complaints filed by certain trade associations that we are engaged in the corporate practice of dentistry or are otherwise violating state regulations regarding the practice of dentistry. However, two state dental boards established rules or interpreted existing rules in a manner that purports to limit or restrict our ability to conduct our business as currently conducted. The Georgia Board of Dentistry passed a rule that requires a licensed dentist to be present when 3D oral images are taken by a dental assistant, and the Board of Dental Examiners of Alabama interpreted existing rules to require "direct supervision" (meaning a dentist must be physically present somewhere in the building) for the taking of a digital image. In both Georgia and Alabama, we filed lawsuits in Federal court against the dental boards and their individual members alleging, among other things, violations of the Sherman Act and interfering with our business model. Both the Alabama and Georgia courts upheld our ability to move forward against individual dental board members, in their official capacity. Both matters were then sent to the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals as a result of the dental boards in both states appealing the lower court's decisions. The Federal Trade Commission (the "FTC") and U.S. Department of Justice ("DOJ") participated in oral arguments in support of SmileDirectClub. The DOJ's antitrust chief presented in the Alabama matter. On August 11, 2020, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals affirmed the Georgia district court's denial of the board members' motion to dismiss. On December 8, 2020, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals voted to have a rehearing en banc. The FTC and DOJ filed an Amicus Brief and participated in oral argument that was held on February 23, 2021. On July 20, 2021 the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals ruled in the Company's favor, finding that the Georgia Dental Board did not have an interlocutory right of appeal and therefore denied the Georgia Board's appeal. On July 29, 2021, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals also denied the Alabama Dental Board's appeal. Both cases were remanded to the respective District Courts to proceed accordingly into the discovery phase.

In 2021, the Alabama Dental Board and the Company entered into a tentative settlement agreement, subject to the FTC's proposed Consent Order being entered into by the Board, precluding the Alabama Dental Board from engaging in conduct intended to preclude teledentistry in the State of Alabama or to preclude dentists and orthodontists from using the Company's teledentistry platform to treat patients. On December 22, 2021, the Consent Order was finalized and the District Court in Alabama thereafter entered its order approving the joint motion for dismissal of the lawsuit per the terms of the settlement reached between the parties. In October 2019, we also filed a lawsuit against the California Dental Board, its members and one of its investigators for engaging in anticompetitive and harassing conduct. The California Dental Board filed a motion to dismiss and the District Court granted that Motion. We appealed the lower court's decision and the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice, as well as the Pacific Legal Foundation, all filed amicus briefs on our behalf. Oral argument was held on July 26, 2021 with the FTC and DOJ arguing in support of the Company at oral argument as well. The appellate court has not yet issued its ruling.

In New Jersey, the Dental Association filed a lawsuit alleging that SmileDirectClub was engaging in the illegal corporate practice of dentistry, without the support or inclusion of the New Jersey Dental Board as a party. In January 2020, the New Jersey court ruled in our favor, granting our motion for summary judgement. The New Jersey Dental Board appealed that ruling and the ruling of the lower court was affirmed by the Appellate Division on June 11, 2021. The Board filed a Notice of Petition for Certification with the Supreme Court of New Jersey on June 28, 2021. No decision on whether to accept the Petition and allow an appeal has been rendered. In addition, a national orthodontic association has met with various dental boards across the country in an effort to advocate for new rules and regulations that could have the effect of interfering with our business model. In October 2019, California passed a law requiring doctors using telehealth to prescribe clear aligner therapy to review a patient's most recent x-ray or other bone imaging suitable for orthodontia. This law went into effect on January 1, 2020 but has not had any material impact on our operations. To date, none of these efforts have resulted in rules and regulations being passed that interfere with our business model in a material way, and we have engaged lobbyists to assist in educating policy makers about our positions. Legislation has been introduced in a handful of states mirroring the recent law in California or to require mandatory in person office visits or the taking and review of radiographs. To date none of these laws have been passed. Legislation has also been introduced and passed in more than 30 states specifically supporting and promoting telehealth and/or teledentistry, including but not limited to requiring insurance companies to pay for such services. We continually monitor these proposed laws and other legal and regulatory developments to understand their potential impact on our operations.

DSO regulation

We are engaged by a network of professional corporations ("PCs") and their affiliated doctors to provide a suite of non-clinical administrative support services, including access to and use of our teledentistry platform, as a Dental Support Organization ("DSO"). As a result, we are required to register in those states that require registrations of DSOs, which currently include Nevada, Kansas, and Texas.

The doctors affiliated with our network of PCs are licensed to practice dentistry in their respective states and are engaged as employees or independent contractors of these PCs. These PCs are owned by independent doctors and are registered to engage in business in their respective states. It is through these PCs that the clinical services for clear aligner therapy are rendered to our customers. We enter into a suite of agreements with each of the PCs to provide its DSO services. In addition, we are also a supplier of the clear aligner products to these PCs and enter into a Supply Agreement with each of the PCs accordingly. The District Court in New Jersey ruled that this structure and suite of agreements comply with the laws of the state of New Jersey precluding the corporate practice of dentistry.

Consumer credit compliance

Our SmilePay program subjects us to complex consumer financial protection laws and regulations, among others. We must comply with all applicable U.S. federal and state regulatory regimes, including but not limited to those governing consumer retail installment credit transactions. Certain U.S. federal and state laws generally regulate the rate or amount of finance charges and fees and require certain disclosures for consumer finance transactions. In particular, we may be subject to laws such as:

- state laws and regulations that impose requirements related to credit disclosures and terms, credit discrimination, credit reporting, debt servicing, and collection;

- the Truth in Lending Act and Regulation Z promulgated thereunder, and similar state laws, which require certain disclosures to customers regarding the terms and conditions of their transactions;

- Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, which prohibits unfair and deceptive acts or practices in or affecting commerce, Section 1031 of the Dodd-Frank Consumer Financial Protection Act, which prohibits unfair, deceptive, or abusive acts or practices in connection with any consumer financial product or service, and similar state laws that prohibit unfair or deceptive acts or practices;

- the Equal Credit Opportunity Act and Regulation B promulgated thereunder and state non-discrimination laws, which generally prohibit creditors from discriminating against credit applicants on the basis of, among other things, race, color, sex, age, religion, national origin, marital status, the fact that all or part of the applicant's income derives from any public assistance program, or the fact that the applicant has in good faith exercised any right under the federal Consumer Credit Protection Act;

- the Fair Credit Reporting Act as amended by the Fair and Accurate Credit Transactions Act, and similar state laws, which promote the accuracy, fairness, and privacy of information in the files of consumer reporting agencies;

- the Fair Debt Collection Practices Act and similar state, and local debt collection laws, which provide guidelines and limitations on the conduct of debt collectors and creditors in connection with the collection of consumer debts;

- Title V of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act and similar state privacy laws, which include limitations on financial institutions' disclosure of nonpublic personal information about a consumer to nonaffiliated third parties, in certain circumstances require financial institutions to limit the use and further disclosure of nonpublic personal information by nonaffiliated third parties to whom they disclose such information, and require financial institutions to disclose certain privacy policies and practices with respect to information sharing with affiliated and nonaffiliated entities as well as to safeguard personal customer information, and other privacy laws and regulations;

- the Bankruptcy Code and similar state insolvency laws, which limit the extent to which creditors may seek to enforce debts against parties who have filed for protection or relief from claims of creditors;

- the Servicemembers' Civil Relief Act and similar state laws, which allow military members and certain dependents to suspend or postpone certain civil obligations, as well as limit applicable rates, so that the military member can devote his or her full attention to military duties;

- the Electronic Fund Transfer Act and Regulation E promulgated thereunder, which provide disclosure requirements, guidelines, and restrictions on the electronic transfer of funds from consumers' deposit accounts;

- the Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act and similar state laws, particularly the Uniform Electronic Transactions Act, which authorize the creation of legally binding and enforceable agreements utilizing electronic records and signatures and, with consumer consent, permits required disclosures to be provided electronically; and

- the Bank Secrecy Act, which relates to compliance with anti-money laundering, customer due diligence, and record-keeping policies and procedures.

Other U.S. federal and state laws

We are also subject to various laws inside and outside the U.S. concerning our relationships with healthcare professionals and government officials, price reporting and regulation, the promotion, sales and marketing of our products and services, the importation and exportation of our products, reimbursement for our products and services, the operation of our facilities, and the distribution of our products. Initiatives sponsored by government agencies, legislative bodies, and the private sector regarding these matters, including efforts to limit the growth of healthcare expenses generally, are ongoing in markets where we do business. It is not possible to predict at this time the long-term impact of such cost containment and other measures on our future business.

We contract with orthodontists, dentists, or professional corporations to deliver our products and services to their patients. These contractual relationships are subject to various state laws that prohibit the practice of dentistry by lay entities or persons and are intended to prevent unlicensed persons from interfering with or influencing the orthodontist's or dentist's professional judgment. In addition, laws in various states also generally prohibit the sharing of professional services income with nonprofessional or business interests. Activities other than those directly related to the delivery of healthcare may be

considered an element of the practice of dentistry in many states. Under the corporate practice of dentistry restrictions of certain states, non-clinical decisions and activities may implicate the restrictions on the corporate practice of dentistry. Further, certain states have requirements for DSOs, such as us. We have registered as a DSO in all states in which we are required to do so. We continually monitor state requirements as to what constitutes the practice of dentistry and take steps to ensure that the orthodontists and dentists who utilize our services and teledentistry platform handle all clinical aspects of their patients' care to ensure we do not violate those laws and regulations.

As a participant in the health care industry we are subject to extensive and frequently changing regulation under many other laws administered by governmental entities at the federal, state, and local levels, some of which are, and others of which may be, applicable to our business. Furthermore, our network of orthodontists and general dentists is also subject to a wide variety of laws and regulations that could affect the nature and scope of their relationships with us. Laws regulating medical device manufacturers and health care providers cover a broad array of subjects.

Several states have fraud and abuse and consumer protection laws that apply to healthcare items or services reimbursed by any third party payor, including commercial insurers, not just those reimbursed by a federally funded healthcare program, or apply regardless of payor. The scope of these laws and the interpretations of them vary from state to state and are enforced by state courts and regulatory authorities, each with broad discretion. A determination of liability under such laws could result in fines and penalties and restrictions on our ability to operate in these jurisdictions.

Health information privacy and security laws

There are numerous U.S. federal and state laws and regulations related to the privacy and security of personally identifiable information ("PII"), including health information. Among others, the federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, as amended by Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act ("HITECH"), and their implementing regulations, which we collectively refer to as HIPAA, establish privacy and security standards that limit the use and disclosure of Protected Health Information ("PHI") and require covered entities and business associates to implement administrative, physical, and technical safeguards to ensure the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of individually identifiable health information in electronic form, among other requirements. We are regulated as a covered entity under HIPAA.

Violations of HIPAA may result in civil and criminal penalties. We must also comply with HIPAA's breach notification rule which requires notification to affected individuals and the Secretary of Health and Human Services ("HHS"), and in certain cases to media outlets, in the case of a breach of unsecured PHI. The regulations also require business associates of covered entities to notify the covered entity of breaches by the business associate.

State attorneys general also have the right to prosecute HIPAA violations committed against residents of their states, and HIPAA standards have been used as the basis for the duty of care in state civil suits, such as those for negligence or recklessness in misusing personal information. In addition, HIPAA mandates that HHS conduct periodic compliance audits of HIPAA covered entities and their business associates for compliance.

Many states in which we operate and in which our customers reside also have laws that protect the privacy and security of sensitive and personal information, including health information. These laws may be similar to or even more protective than HIPAA and other federal privacy laws. For example, the laws of the State of California, in which we operate, are more restrictive than HIPAA. Where state laws are more protective than HIPAA, we must comply with the state laws we are subject to, in addition to HIPAA. California passed the California Consumer Privacy Act or CCPA on June 28, 2018, which went into effect January 1, 2020. On November 3, 2020, the California Privacy Rights Act of 2020 ("CPRA"), which amends the CCPA and adds new privacy protections that became effective on January 1, 2023, was enacted through a ballot initiative. While information we maintain that is covered by HIPAA may be exempt from the CCPA, other records and information we maintain on our customers may be subject to the CCPA. In certain cases, it may be necessary to modify our planned operations and procedures to comply with these more stringent state laws. Not only may some of these state laws impose fines and penalties upon violators, but also some, unlike HIPAA, may afford private rights of action to individuals who believe their personal information has been misused. In addition, state and federal privacy laws subject to frequent change.

In addition to HIPAA and state health information privacy laws, we may be subject to other state and federal privacy laws, including laws that prohibit unfair privacy and security practices and deceptive statements about privacy and security, laws that place specific requirements on certain types of activities, such as data security and texting, and laws requiring holders of personal information to maintain safeguards and to take certain actions in response to a data breach.

Foreign data protection, privacy, and other laws and regulations are often more restrictive than those in the U.S. The E.U., for example, traditionally has imposed stricter obligations under its laws and regulations relating to privacy, data protection and consumer protection than the U.S. In May 2018, the General Data Protection Regulation ("GDPR"), which governs data practices and privacy in the E.U., became effective and provides a basis for the data protection laws of the individual member states. The E.U.'s GDPR requires companies to meet stringent requirements regarding the handling of personal data of individuals in the E.U. These more stringent requirements include expanded disclosures to inform individuals about how we may use their personal data, increased controls on profiling individuals, and increased rights for individuals to access, control and delete their personal data. In addition, there are mandatory data breach notification requirements. The law also includes significant penalties for non-compliance, which may result in monetary penalties of up to 20 million Euros or 4% of a group's worldwide turnover, whichever is higher. GDPR and other similar regulations require companies to give specific types of notice and informed consent is required for the placement of a cookie or similar technologies on a user's device for online tracking for behavioral advertising and other purposes and for direct electronic marketing, and the GDPR also imposes additional conditions in order to satisfy such consent, such as a prohibition on pre-checked consents. It remains unclear how the U.K. data protection laws or regulations will develop in the medium to longer term and how data transfer to the U.K. from the E.U. will be regulated.

We are subject to Personal Information Protection and Electronic Documents Act ("PIPEDA") and similar provincial laws in Canada. PIPEDA is the federal privacy law for private-sector organizations. It sets out the ground rules for how businesses must handle personal information in the course of commercial activity. Under PIPEDA, we must obtain an individual's consent when we collect, use or disclose that individual's personal information. Individuals have the right to access and challenge the accuracy of their personal information held by an organization, and personal information may only be used for the purposes for which it was collected. If an organization intends to use personal information for another purpose, it must again obtain that individual's consent. Failure to comply with PIPEDA could result in significant fines and penalties or possible damage awards for the tort of public humiliation.

We are subject to the Australian Privacy Act of 1988 ("Privacy Act"), of which the Australian Government is conducting a review and updates to the law are actively under review. The Privacy Act regulates the private sector's use of personal information, and also includes a data breach notification scheme. The updated law is anticipated to touch on issues relating to how "personal information" is defined, the use of third-party cookies, requirements related to the collection, use, and disclosure of personal information, and what constitutes adequate consent.

There are many other countries with data protection laws, and new countries are adopting data protection legislation with increasing frequency. Many of these laws may require consent from individuals for the use of data for various purposes, including marketing, which may reduce our ability to market our products. There is no harmonized approach to these laws and regulations globally. Consequently, we increase our risk of non-compliance with applicable foreign data protection laws and regulations when we expand internationally. We may need to change and limit the way we use personal information in operating our business and may have difficulty maintaining a single operating model that is compliant. Compliance with such laws and regulations will result in additional costs and may necessitate changes to our business practices and divergent operating models, limit the effectiveness of our marketing activities, adversely affect our business, results of operations, and financial condition, and subject us to additional liabilities.

Environmental Matters

We have no material expenditures for compliance with Federal, State or local provisions regulating the discharge of materials into the environment, or otherwise relating to the protection of the environment.

Human Capital Management

Our Team Members

We have approximately 2,700 team members, including those who work remotely, at our headquarters and our manufacturing facilities in Tennessee, our facilities in Costa Rica, our International team and at SmileShops and popup locations. We service customers across the U.S., Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, the U.K., Ireland, and France. We operate as a remote optional workforce for team members responsible for customer care, marketing, finance, legal, people and organization, information technology, data science, and analytics. Our team members at our Antioch, Tennessee manufacturing facility are primarily responsible for developing, overseeing and carrying out manufacturing operations, while our team members in Costa Rica are primarily treatment plan setup technicians, licensed orthodontic consultants, and additional customer care team members. We believe that our relations with our team members are good. We are not a party to any collective bargaining agreements.

Company Culture

We are committed to recognizing, valuing, and engaging our top-tier talent, who are at the core of our success. We survey our team members to measure team engagement and the drivers behind the level of engagement and use survey results to drive team-level actions for continuous improvement, learning and development. We believe the next great idea can come from anywhere within our company, and numerous impactful initiatives have come from team member feedback, including flexible work hours, unlimited time off for exempt team members, lower deductible healthcare plans, work/life balance promotion, and wellness initiatives for physical and mental health, such as instructor-led mindfulness courses, access to virtual workouts, and resources such as access to counseling and mindfulness apps.

Our culture is built around collaboration and innovation. We created a team member focus group, our Culture Council, that allows team members to work together and propose initiatives that impact the organization, while promoting our culture and sense of inclusion and belonging. The Culture Council has initiated various events, such as virtual networking events, that connect team members of all different levels within the organization while we continue to work from home.

We are dedicated to investing in our team members and facilitating engagement and recognition initiatives across the company. We promote direct access to leadership and connect our team members to our company vision through company and team town halls and recognition-based “Fireside Chats” with our leadership. We celebrate the hard work and dedication of our team members through our global recognition platform, Chompions, team happy hours or coffee chats, holiday-based events, and work anniversary celebrations, among other ways.

Talent Development and Training

We are committed to pursuing competitive advantage through filling our most important roles with the best talent, and have established succession planning processes and talent reviews for our global workforce. Our executives and their supporting leadership teams participated in training and development programs as part of this rollout, demonstrating top-down support. Succession planning discussions and efforts were completed for each team with unique action plans identified for retention and development of our critical talent and those in mission critical roles.

Inclusion, Diversity and Belonging

We are committed to the life-changing potential of inclusion and the power of diversity. We strive to listen, learn, and adapt to champion our team members. We have been seeking to achieve transformational change through a variety of initiatives, including the formation of our Inclusion, Diversity, and Belonging Council. This team is represented by highly engaged team members from across the organization. Our strategic areas of focus include learning and development, recruitment, workforce representation and retention, and a culture of belonging.

Available Information

Our website is *www.smiledirectclub.com*, and our investor relations website is *https://investors.smiledirectclub.com*. The information on or accessible through our websites is not part of this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Our Annual Report on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, Current Reports on Form 8-K, our proxy statement on Schedule 14A for our annual stockholders' meeting, and amendments to such reports are available, free of charge, on our investor relations website as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file or furnish such material with the SEC. Further, the SEC maintains an internet site that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information regarding our filings at http://*www.sec.gov*.

Information about our Executive Officers

The following table sets forth certain information regarding our executive officers as of March 1, 2023.

Name	Age	Position
David Katzman	63	Chief Executive Officer and Chairman
Steven Katzman	59	Chief Operating Officer and Director
Troy Crawford	55	Chief Financial Officer, Chief Accounting Officer, and Treasurer
Susan Greenspon Rammelt	58	Chief Legal Officer, EVP Business Affairs, Secretary, and Director

David Katzman has served as our Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of our board since we were founded in 2014. Mr. Katzman is the founder and Managing Partner of Camelot Venture Group, a private investment group that invests primarily in direct-to-consumer brands, such as Quicken Loans and 1-800 Contacts. Mr. Katzman has served on the boards of several direct-to-consumer online companies, including consumer electronics company Sharper Image Online, and has previously served on the boards of diabetic supply company Simplex Healthcare, online promotions company ePrize, bedding company CleanRest, and online mortgage company Quicken Loans (as Vice Chairman). Mr. Katzman also served as Vice Chairman of the National Basketball Association's Cleveland Cavaliers and as Managing Partner of sports graphics company Fathead. Prior to founding Camelot in 1998, Mr. Katzman led a variety of consumer-oriented companies before becoming President of Home Depot S.O.C., a division of Home Depot USA specializing in the processing of special orders for Home Depot stores nationwide.

Steven Katzman has served as our Chief Operating Officer since May 2018 and as a member of our board since 2017. Prior to becoming Chief Operating Officer, Mr. Katzman served as our Chief Financial Officer from March 2018 to May 2018. For the past ten years, Mr. Katzman has also served as an advisor to Camelot, where he provides strategic overview across all portfolio companies and opportunities. Mr. Katzman also co-founded and serves as Chief Executive Officer of Steve's Blinds & Wallpaper, a family-owned, direct-to-consumer e-commerce business selling custom made blinds and wallpaper. Prior to these positions, Mr. Katzman served for nearly 20 years as Chief Executive Officer and President of American Blind and Wallpaper Factory and its related family of direct-to-consumer custom home decor companies.

Troy Crawford has served as our Chief Financial Officer, Chief Accounting Officer and Treasurer since June 2022, after serving as the Company's interim Chief Financial Officer starting in January 2022. Prior to that, served as the Company's Chief Accounting Officer since January of 2020. Before joining the Company, he was the Senior Vice President and Chief Accounting Officer of GameStop Corp., from June 2010 to December 2019, and was its Vice President, Controller from 2006 to June 2010. From 1993 to 2006, Mr. Crawford held various financial management positions, including Controller at CompUSA, and before that he held various finance and accounting positions with Cinemark USA, Inc. Mr. Crawford is a CPA.

Susan Greenspon Rammelt has served as our Chief Legal Officer and EVP of Business Affairs since January 1, 2020, and prior to that as General Counsel beginning April 2018, and has also served as our Corporate Secretary since March 2019 and as a member of our board since August 2019. Ms. Greenspon Rammelt has also served as General Counsel of Camelot since April 2018. Prior to joining SmileDirectClub, Ms. Greenspon Rammelt was a corporate law partner at Foley & Lardner

LLP since 2017, where she represented domestic and international enterprises. Prior to that, Ms. Greenspon Rammelt was a partner at Dentons US LLP. Ms. Greenspon Rammelt has 30 years of experience as a corporate attorney, focusing on mergers and acquisitions, financings, restructurings, corporate governance, and general corporate counseling, particularly in the retail and beauty industries.

Item 1A. Risk Factors

Risk Factor Summary

Below is a summary of the principal factors that make an investment in the Company speculative or risky. This summary does not address all of the risks that we face. Additional discussion of the risks summarized in this risk factor summary, and other risks that we face, can be found below, after this summary, and should be carefully considered.

Risks Related to Our Business and Industry:

- We may not generate sufficient cash flow necessary to continue to invest and expand into new markets or expand market share.
- We may be unable to raise additional capital to continue to invest and expand into new markets or expand market share.
- If we fail to manage our growth effectively, our business could be materially adversely affected.
- Demand for our clear aligners may not increase as anticipated, and our business depends on sales of our clear aligners for the vast majority of our net revenue.
- Changes in the laws governing remote healthcare could hurt our ability to conduct our business.
- If our marketing and advertising campaigns are not successful, we may not be able to recover our marketing spend.
- Our performance and ability to market and sell our products depends on the success of our retail partner relationships.
- Sales of a significant portion of our aligners may depend on member's ability to obtain reimbursement.
- Our future success may depend on our ability to enhance our existing products and services or to develop, obtain regulatory clearance for and achieve market acceptance of new products and services.
- Because our current Chairman and CEO has other business interests, he may not be able or willing to devote a sufficient amount of time to our business operations.
- The COVID-19 pandemic has had, and is expected to have, a material adverse impact on our business.
- We rely on third-party suppliers for some of our manufacturing components, which subjects us to significant risks, including the potential inability to obtain or produce products on time or in sufficient quantities.
- We are dependent on some international suppliers and have expanded internationally, which exposes us to foreign operational and political risks and the need to obtain necessary foreign regulatory clearance.
- Our information technology systems are critical to our business. System integration and implementation issues and system security risks could disrupt our operations.

- If we are unable to accurately predict our volume growth and fail to hire a sufficient number of technicians in advance of such demand, the delivery time of our products could be delayed.

- If we choose to acquire or invest in new businesses or products instead of developing them ourselves, these acquisitions could result in the use of significant amounts of equity, cash, or a combination of both.

- We offer a financing option, which subjects us to additional regulations and compliance costs.

- An increase in interest rates on our debt would increase the servicing of our debt and reduce profitability.

- Our subsidiaries have recently incurred secured debt, which may adversely impact our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

- Our subsidiaries have substantial debt which is secured by the assets of our wholly-owned special purpose subsidiary, SPV and guaranteed on a limited basis by SmileDirectClub, LLC and SDC Financial LLC. If there is an occurrence of an uncured event of default, the lenders can foreclose on SPV's assets, which would significantly and adversely impact our value.

- The Loan Agreement contains covenants that restrict the business of our subsidiaries, the breach of which may result in the acceleration of debt outstanding under the Loan Agreement and could adversely affect our financial position or result of operations and our ability to raise additional capital.

- Our outstanding debt instruments contain restrictions and covenants that may limit our operating flexibility and which, if violated, could result in the acceleration of the amounts due.

- Climate change and related public focus from regulators and various stakeholders.

Risks Related to Legal and Regulatory Matters:

- Our business could be adversely affected by ongoing professional and legal challenges to our business model or by new state actions restricting our ability to provide our products and services in certain states.

- We are the subject of purported class action lawsuits and additional litigation may be brought against us.

- Our success depends in part on our proprietary technology, and if we are unable to successfully enforce our intellectual property rights, our competitive position may be harmed.

- Complying with regulations enforced by FDA and other regulatory authorities is expensive and time-consuming, and failure to comply could result in substantial penalties.

- We may not receive the necessary authorizations to market our new products.

- Certain modifications to our products may require new 510(k) clearance or other marketing authorizations.

- Our products must be manufactured in accordance with federal, state, and international regulations, and we could be forced to recall our products or terminate production if we fail to comply with these regulations.

- Our products may cause adverse medical events that we are required to report to FDA and other governmental authorities, and if we fail to do so, we would be subject to sanctions.

- Extensive and changing government regulation of the internet and the healthcare industry may be expensive to comply with and exposes us to the risk of substantial government penalties.

- We are subject to data privacy laws governing our handling of PII, including personal health information, which may impose restrictions on us and our operations.

- Our systems and networks may be subject to cybersecurity breaches and other disruptions.

- We are subject to consumer protection laws that regulate our marketing practices and prohibit unfair or deceptive acts or practices. Our failure to comply could harm our business.

- Issues related to the quality and safety of our products, raw materials, or packaging could cause a product recall or discontinuation or litigation.

Risks Related to our Common Stock:

- Our Class A common stock could be delisted from NASDAQ, which would seriously harm the liquidity of our Class A common stock.

- We are a "controlled company" within the meaning of the corporate governance standards of NASDAQ. As a result, we qualify for, and rely on, exemptions from certain corporate governance standards.

- If we are unable to maintain effective internal control over financial reporting, investors may lose confidence in the accuracy of our financial reports and the market price of our Class A common stock may decline.

- The trading price of shares of our Class A common stock has declined significantly since our initial public offering on September 16, 2019 ("IPO").

- We have no current plans to pay cash dividends on our Class A common stock.

- The dual-class structure of our common stock may adversely affect the trading market for our Class A Shares.

- If we or the Pre-IPO investors sell substantial amounts of shares of our Class A common stock, the market price of our Class A common stock could decline.

Risks Related to Organization and Structure:

- David Katzman controls a majority of the voting power of shares of our common stock eligible to vote in the election of our directors and on other matters submitted to a vote of our stockholders, and his interests may conflict with ours.

- We are a holding company. Our sole material asset is our equity interest in SDC Financial LLC ("SDC Financial"), and as such, we depend on our subsidiaries for cash to fund all of our expenses.

- SDC Financial may make distributions of cash to us substantially in excess of the amounts we use to make distributions to our stockholders and pay our expenses. To the extent we do not distribute such excess cash as dividends on our Class A common stock, the holders of membership interests of SDC Financial ("LLC Units") (collectively, the "Continuing LLC Members") would benefit from any value attributable to such cash as a result of their ownership of Class A common stock upon an exchange or redemption of their LLC Units.

- We will be required to pay the Continuing LLC Members for certain tax benefits we may claim as a result of the tax basis step-up we received in connection with our IPO, as well as subsequent exchanges of LLC Units for shares of

Class A common stock or cash. In certain circumstances, payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement may be accelerated and/or significantly exceed the actual tax benefits we realize.

Risks Related to Our Indebtedness:

- We have indebtedness in the form of convertible senior notes and asset backed loans, which could adversely affect our business, financial condition and our ability to respond to changes in our business.

Certain factors may have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations. You should carefully consider the following risks, together with all of the other information contained in this Annual Report on Form 10-K, including the sections titled "Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and our financial statements and the related notes included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Any of the following risks could materially and adversely affect our business, strategies, prospects, financial condition, results of operations, and cash flows. In such case, the market price of our Class A common stock could decline. Our business, prospects, financial condition, or results of operations could also be harmed by risks and uncertainties not currently known to us or that we currently do not believe are material.

Risks Related to Our Business and Industry

We may be unable to raise additional capital, which could harm our ability to compete.

We expect to expend significant capital to establish our brand, build manufacturing infrastructure, and develop both product and process technology. These initiatives may require us to raise additional capital over the next few years. We may consume available resources more rapidly than anticipated and we may not be able to raise additional funds when needed or on acceptable terms.

If we raise additional funds through further issuances of equity or convertible debt securities, our existing stockholders could suffer significant dilution, and any new equity securities we issue could have rights, preferences, and privileges superior to those of holders of our Class A common stock. If we are unable to obtain adequate financing or financing on terms satisfactory to us, when we require it, our ability to continue to pursue our business objectives and to respond to business opportunities, challenges, or unforeseen circumstances could be significantly limited, and our business, operating results, financial condition, and prospects could be materially adversely affected.

An increase in interest rates on our borrowings would increase the cost of servicing our debt and reduce our profitability.

A portion of our outstanding debt bears interest at floating rates. As a result, to the extent we have not hedged against rising interest rates, an increase in the applicable benchmark interest rates would increase our cost of servicing our debt and could materially and adversely affect our results of operations, financial condition, liquidity, and cash flows. Such rates tend to fluctuate based on general economic conditions, general interest rates, Federal Reserve (the "Fed") rates, and the supply of and demand for credit in the relevant interbanking market. Recently, the Fed has incrementally raised the federal funds rate. Increases in the interest rate generally, and particularly when coupled with any significant variable rate indebtedness, could materially adversely impact our interest expenses. If interest rates increase, our debt service obligations on variable rate indebtedness would increase even though the amount borrowed remained the same, and our net income and cash flows, including cash available for servicing our indebtedness, would correspondingly decrease. In addition, we may refinance our indebtedness. If interest rates or our borrowing margins increase between the time an existing financing arrangement was consummated and the time such financing arrangement is refinanced, the cost of servicing our debt would increase and our financial condition, liquidity, and cash flows could be materially and adversely affected.

We have a history of net losses and we may not achieve or maintain profitability in the future.

We have incurred net operating losses since inception. For the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, we incurred net losses of $(277.9) million, $(335.7) million and $(278.5) million, respectively. From inception through the

present, we have spent significant funds in organizational and start-up activities, to recruit key managers and employees, to develop our clear aligners and our suite of oral care products, to develop our manufacturing and member support resources, and for research and development. It is possible that we will not achieve profitability or that, even if we do achieve profitability, we may not maintain or increase profitability in the future.

We have a limited operating history and have grown significantly in a short period of time. If we fail to manage our growth effectively, our business could be materially adversely affected.

We were organized and began selling clear aligners manufactured by third parties in 2014, and we began selling clear aligners manufactured by us in 2016. We began selling a suite of ancillary oral care products in January 2020. Accordingly, we have a limited operating history, which makes an evaluation of our future prospects difficult. Our operating results have fluctuated in the past, and we expect our future quarterly and annual operating results to fluctuate as we focus on increasing demand for our products. We may need to make business decisions that could adversely affect our operating results, such as modifications to our pricing policy, business structure, or operations.

In addition, we have grown rapidly since inception and anticipate further growth. Our total revenues increased from $20.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 to $470.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2022. The number of our employees increased from approximately 225 at December 31, 2016 to approximately 2,700 currently.

This growth has placed significant demands on our management, financial, operational, technological, and other resources, and we expect that our growth will continue to place significant demands on our management and other resources and will require us to continue developing and improving our operational, financial, and other internal controls, both in the U.S. and internationally. In particular, continued growth increases the challenges involved in a number of areas, including: recruiting and retaining sufficient skilled personnel, providing adequate training and supervision to maintain our high quality standards, and preserving our culture and values. We may not be able to address these challenges in a cost-effective manner or at all. If we do not effectively manage our growth, we may not be able to execute on our business plan, respond to competitive pressures, take advantage of market opportunities, satisfy member requirements, or maintain high-quality product offerings, and our business, financial condition, and results of operations could be materially harmed.

We depend on sales of our clear aligners for the vast majority of our net revenues. Demand for our clear aligners may not increase as rapidly as we anticipate due to a variety of factors, including consumer reluctance to accept teledentistry, a weakness in general economic conditions, or competitive pressures.

We expect that net revenues from sales of our clear aligners will continue to account for the vast majority of our total net revenues for the foreseeable future. Continued and widespread market acceptance of teledentistry by consumers is critical to our future success. Delivery of clear aligners via a teledentistry model represents a change from traditional orthodontic treatment, which requires in-person visits, and consumers may be reluctant to accept this model or may not find it preferable to traditional treatment. In addition, consumers may not respond to our direct marketing campaigns, or we may be unsuccessful in reaching our target audience, particularly in foreign jurisdictions where our advertising may be more heavily regulated. If consumers prove unwilling to adopt our teledentistry model as rapidly or in the numbers that we anticipate, our operating results could be materially harmed.

Consumer spending habits are affected by, among other things, prevailing economic conditions, inflation factors, levels of employment, salaries and wage rates, consumer confidence, and consumer perception of economic conditions. In many markets, dental and orthodontic reimbursement is largely out of pocket for the consumer and, as result, utilization rates can vary significantly depending on economic growth. A general slowdown in the U.S. economy and certain international economies into which we have recently expanded or plan to expand or an uncertain economic outlook could adversely affect consumer spending habits, which may result in, among other things, a decrease in the number of overall orthodontic case starts, a reduction in consumer spending on elective or higher value procedures, or a reduction in demand for dental and orthodontic services generally, each of which would have an adverse effect on our sales and operating results. Inflation and weakness in the global economy result in a challenging environment for selling dental and orthodontic technologies. If there is a reduction in consumer demand for orthodontic treatment generally, if consumers choose to use a competitive product

rather than our clear aligners, or if the average selling price of our clear aligners declines as a result of economic conditions, competitive pressures, or any other reason, our business, results of operations, and financial condition could be materially harmed.

Adverse changes in, or interpretations of, laws, rules, and regulations governing remote healthcare and the practice of dentistry could have a material adverse effect on our business.

Our current business model is dependent, in part, on current laws, rules, and regulations governing remote healthcare and the practice of dentistry. If changes in laws, rules, regulations, or their interpretations are inconsistent with our current business model, we would need to adapt our business model accordingly, and our operations in certain jurisdictions may be disrupted, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

We face competition in the market for our clear aligners, and we expect competition from existing competitors and other companies that may enter the market or introduce new technologies in the future, which may decrease our net revenues.

We compete with a handful of smaller companies that collectively have limited market share in the direct-to-consumer clear aligner industry, including Byte. We also face competition from more well-established competitors in the traditional orthodontic industry, which requires in-person visits, such as Align. We expect some additional competition from other teledentistry solutions, and from new entrants into the orthodontic supply or clear aligner markets. Some of these competitors may have greater resources as well as the ability to leverage existing channels in the dental market to compete directly with us. In addition, we may also face future competition from companies that introduce new technologies. We may be unable to compete with these competitors, and one or more of these competitors may render our technology obsolete or economically unattractive. As we have expanded internationally, we will face additional competition in geographies outside the U.S. If we are unable to compete effectively with existing products or respond effectively to any new products developed by competitors, our business could be materially harmed. Increased competition may result in price reductions, reduced gross margins, reduced profitability, and loss of market share. There can be no assurance that we will be able to compete successfully against our current or future competitors or that competitive pressures will not have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

We spend significant amounts on advertising and other marketing campaigns to acquire new members, which may not be successful or cost-effective.

We market our aligners and other products through an omni-channel approach supported by media mix modeling and multitouch attribution modeling. Our marketing approach focuses on both offline activities, mainly television, and online digital marketing. We spend significant amounts on advertising and other marketing campaigns to acquire new members, and we expect our marketing expenses to increase in the future as we continue to spend significant amounts to acquire new members and increase awareness of our products. While we seek to structure our marketing campaigns in the manner that we believe is most likely to encourage consumers to use our products, we may fail to identify marketing opportunities that satisfy our anticipated return on marketing spend as we scale our investments in marketing, accurately predict member acquisition, or fully understand or estimate the conditions and behaviors that drive consumer behavior. If, for any reason, any of our marketing campaigns prove less successful than anticipated in attracting new members, we may not be able to recover our marketing spend, and our rate of member acquisition may fail to meet market expectations, either of which could adversely affect our business, results of operations, and financial condition. There can be no assurance that our marketing efforts will result in increased sales of our products.

If our retail partner relationships are not successful, our ability to market and sell our products would be harmed and our financial performance would be adversely affected.

We have developed an oral care product line, which includes non-prescription products to be offered through large, national retail partners. We have limited ability to influence the efforts of our retail partners, and relying on them for a portion of our sales could harm our business for various reasons, including:

- our retail partners may not devote sufficient resources to the sale of our products or may be unsuccessful in marketing our products;
- our agreements with retail partners may terminate prematurely due to disagreements or may result in litigation;
- we may not be able to renew existing retail partner agreements or negotiate future retail partner agreements on acceptable terms; and
- our agreements with retail partners may preclude us from entering into additional future arrangements.

Sales of a significant portion of our clear aligners may depend on our members' ability to obtain reimbursement from third-party payors, such as insurance carriers.

Sales of our clear aligners may depend on our members' ability to obtain reimbursement from third-party payors, such as insurance carriers. Any reduction in insurance or other third-party payor reimbursement currently available to our members for our clear aligners may cause negative price pressure, which would reduce our revenues. Without a corresponding reduction in the cost to produce such products, the result would be a reduction in our overall gross profit. Similarly, any increase in the cost of such products would reduce our overall gross profit unless there was a corresponding increase in third-party payor reimbursement. In addition, although we have contracts with certain insurance companies and are negotiating with others, healthcare initiatives in the U.S. may lead third-party payors to decline or reduce reimbursement for our clear aligner treatment, and compliance with administrative procedures or requirements of third-party payors may result in delays in processing approvals by those payors for members to obtain coverage for our clear aligners. Finally, as we expand our sales and marketing efforts outside of the U.S., we face additional risks associated with obtaining and maintaining coverage and securing reimbursement from foreign health care payment systems on a timely basis or at all. Failure by our members to obtain or maintain coverage or to secure adequate reimbursement for our clear aligner treatment by third-party payors could have an adverse effect on our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

Our growth and future success may depend on our ability to enhance our existing products and services or to develop, obtain regulatory clearance for, successfully introduce, and achieve market acceptance of new products and services.

We intend to continually improve and enhance our existing products and services and/or develop and introduce new products and services in order to maintain or increase our sales. The success of new or enhanced products and services may depend on a number of factors, including anticipating and effectively addressing consumer preferences and demand, the success of our sales and marketing efforts, innovation and timely and successful research and development, obtaining necessary regulatory clearances, anticipating and responding to competing products and technological innovations, adequately protecting our intellectual property rights, effective forecasting and management of product demand, effective management of manufacturing and supply costs, and the quality of our products. There can be no assurance that we will be able to successfully develop and introduce new or enhanced products and services. Even if new or enhanced products and services are successfully introduced, they may not rapidly gain market share and acceptance.

The development of new products and services in the dental and orthodontic industry can be complex and costly. We could experience delays in the development and introduction of new and enhanced products and services, including delays in obtaining any necessary regulatory clearances. Unanticipated problems in developing products and services could also divert substantial research and development resources, which may impair our ability to develop new products and services and enhancements of existing products and services, and could substantially increase our costs. If new or enhanced product and

service introductions are delayed or not successful, we may not be able to achieve an acceptable return, if any, on our research and development efforts, and our business may be adversely affected. Even if we successfully innovate and develop new or enhanced products and services, we may incur substantial costs in doing so and our profitability may suffer.

Any failure in our ability to successfully develop, introduce, or achieve market acceptance of new or enhanced products and services, or any problems in the design or quality of any products or services we develop, could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

Because our current Chairman and Chief Executive Officer has other business interests, he may not be able or willing to devote a sufficient amount of time to our business operations, which could negatively impact our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

David Katzman, our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, has other business interests outside of SmileDirectClub. While we believe that Mr. Katzman presently has adequate time to attend to our business, it is possible that the demands on him from other obligations could increase, with the result that he would no longer be able to devote sufficient time to the management of our business, in which case we could need the services of a full-time Chief Executive Officer. Additionally, there is a risk of conflict of interest with other entities for which David Katzman provides services, which are monitored by our Board. In addition, we have a related party transactions policy, which details procedures to address any related party transactions with Mr. Katzman or any of these entities. The loss of Mr. Katzman to us could negatively impact our operations and financial results. See "—Risks Related to Our Organization and Structure—Pursuant to the Voting Agreement, David Katzman, our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, controls a majority of the voting power of shares of our common stock eligible to vote in the election of our directors and on other matters submitted to a vote of our stockholders, and his interests may conflict with ours or our stockholders' in the future."

The COVID-19 pandemic and the measures implemented to contain the spread of the virus have had, and are expected to continue to have, a material adverse impact on our business, results of operations and cash flows.

The emergence of the COVID-19 pandemic and the resulting containment measures have had, and we expect will continue to have, a material adverse impact on our business, results of operations and cash flows, the extent and duration of which depend on numerous evolving factors and future developments that we are unable to predict, including the resurgence of COVID-19 and its variants in regions recovering from the impacts of the pandemic, the duration, spread and severity of any such outbreak and any variant strains; the nature, extent and effectiveness of containment measures; the ability of vaccines to protect against variant strains of COVID-19; vaccine mandates that may be implemented in jurisdictions in which our business operates which could adversely affect our workforce retention and hiring; the significant stress on global supply chains, resulting in parts shortages and/or inefficiencies in production caused by the rapid increase in demand as the COVID-19 pandemic wanes; the immediate and long-term impact on the economy, unemployment, consumer confidence and consumer spending; and how quickly and to what extent normal economic and operating conditions can resume.

The COVID-19 pandemic and containment measures have contributed to certain negative impacts on our business, including, without limitation, the following:

- Decreased sales of our clear aligners, retainers and other products that we expect will continue.
- Closed a portion of our SmileShops based on our real estate repositioning program, local public health guidelines and evolving customer behaviors and expectations.
- Decreased sales of our oral care product line as our retail partners experience disruption due to mandated or encouraged shelter-in-place and social distancing policies.

- Reduced consumer demand due to deteriorating economic and political conditions such as increased unemployment, decreased salary and wage rates, and decreased consumer confidence and consumer perception of economic conditions.

- Reduced marketing efforts, which has had and may continue to have negative impacts on our ability to increase demand and improve member conversion.

- Reduced a portion of our headquarters and retail workforce, which may result in an additional loss of key employees, that in turn may significantly delay or prevent the achievement of our business objectives, and further may negatively impact our ability to recruit and retain personnel in the future.

- Revised the timing of expansion into certain international markets due to delays in the regulatory approval process of certain foreign governments.

- Experienced increased order cancellations.

- Experienced increased payment deferral requests.

- Experienced significant inflation in materials, freight and labor costs due to the rapid increase in business activity across the globe.

- Experienced delays in obtaining parts, materials, components and final assemblies because of the significant stress on the global supply chain.

Additionally, due to the protracted nature of the COVID-19 pandemic, as well as the evolving regulatory environment, our business and financial results may be adversely affected by numerous evolving factors, many of which we cannot control or predict, including, without limitation, our ability to:

- Manage a new work environment, including our internal controls and financial reporting, as a substantial portion of our headquarters team members work remotely.

- Operate SmileShops and popup locations in compliance with both voluntary and mandated health and safety protocols; and correspondingly, our customers' willingness to visit and have confidence in the process of our SmileShop experience.

- Gauge the impact of COVID-19 and related potential disruptions to the operations of our suppliers, freight carriers and retail partners, including social and economic constraints, tariffs and trade barriers, facilities closures, supply chain vulnerability and stress causing delays, labor instability, and capacity reduction.

- Anticipate the potential for increased defaults on our SmilePay financing plan, including the potential for an increase in our delinquency rates and number of uncollectible accounts, as the economic impacts of COVID-19 intensify.

- Estimate or forecast the financial impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on our actual or future results.

The above impacts of the COVID-19 pandemic and containment measures are likely to continue, and in some instances, may worsen. The duration and severity of the pandemic may also heighten other risks described in the "Risk Factors" section herein. The full extent to which the COVID-19 pandemic will negatively affect our business, results of operations and cash flows is not yet known, cannot be predicted and may continue even once the pandemic is controlled and containment measures are lifted.

A disruption in the operations of our freight carriers or higher shipping costs could cause a decline in our net revenues or a reduction in our earnings.

We are dependent on commercial freight carriers to deliver our products to our members. If the operations of these carriers are disrupted for any reason, we may be unable to deliver our products to our members on a timely basis. If we cannot deliver our products in an efficient and timely manner, our members may cancel their orders from us or seek other compensation for delays, and our net revenues and gross margin could materially decline. In a rising fuel cost environment, our freight costs will increase. If freight costs materially increase and we are unable to pass that increase along to our members for any reason or otherwise offset such increases in our cost of net revenues, our gross margin and financial results could be adversely affected.

We rely on third-party suppliers for some of our manufacturing components and have limited control over our suppliers, which subjects us to significant risks, including the potential inability to obtain or produce quality products on a timely basis or in sufficient quantities.

We rely on third-party suppliers for several components used in the manufacture of our products. We have limited control over our suppliers, including aspects of their specific manufacturing processes and their labor, environmental, or other practices, which subjects us to significant risks, including the following:

- inability of our suppliers to satisfy demand for our manufacturing components and to produce sufficient equipment and materials to support our growth, which could disrupt our ability to deliver our products in a timely manner;
- reduced control over manufacturing standards, controls, procedures, and policies, reduced ability to oversee the manufacturing process, and reduced ability to develop and monitor compliance with our product manufacturing specifications, each of which could negatively impact product quality and reliability;
- price increases, which could result in lower gross margins;
- entry into non-cancelable minimum purchase commitments, which could impact our ability to adjust our capacity and inventory and could lead to excess and obsolete equipment and supplies;
- technology changes by our suppliers, which could disrupt access to required manufacturing capacity or require expensive, time-consuming development efforts to adapt and integrate new equipment or processes;
- the delay or failure of a key supplier to perform its obligations to us due to financial, operating, or other difficulties;
- difficulties in quickly establishing additional supplier relationships on commercially acceptable terms in the event that we experience difficulties with our existing suppliers;
- infringement or misappropriation of our intellectual property;
- exposure to natural catastrophes, political unrest, terrorism, labor disputes, and economic instability resulting in the disruption of trade;
- changes in local economic conditions in areas where our suppliers or logistics providers are located;

- the imposition of new laws and regulations, including those relating to labor conditions, quality and safety standards, imports, duties, taxes, and other charges on imports, as well as trade restrictions and restrictions on currency exchange or the transfer of funds; and

- insufficient warranties and indemnities.

If any of these risks were to materialize, we could face production interruptions, delays, or inefficiencies or could be forced to curtail or cease operations, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

If we encounter manufacturing problems or delays, our ability to generate revenue will be limited.

Historically, we purchased our clear aligners and retainers from third-party manufacturers. In 2016, we opened our first manufacturing facility in Antioch, Tennessee to lower our manufacturing costs, increase supply redundancy, and add capacity to support growth. We are in the process of completing an additional manufacturing facility in Columbia, Tennessee. To date, we have incurred significant capital expenditures related to these facilities, and we expect that capital expenditures will continue to be significant as we further upgrade our Tennessee facilities. These costs could increase significantly, and there is no assurance that the final costs will not be materially higher than anticipated. We are also exploring alternative site manufacturing capabilities both domestically and abroad, which would require additional capital expenditures.

We now manufacture all of our own clear aligners and retainers. We have experienced manufacturing delays as we have rapidly expanded our in-house manufacturing capabilities, and there can be no assurance that these manufacturing or quality control problems will not continue as we continue to scale-up and automate our production, or that we will be able to do so in a timely manner or at commercially reasonable costs. If we are unable to manufacture a sufficient supply of product, maintain control over expenses, or otherwise adapt to anticipated growth, or if we underestimate growth, we may not have the capability to satisfy market demand, and our business and reputation in the marketplace will suffer. We may also encounter defects in materials and/or workmanship, which could lead to a failure to adhere to regulatory requirements. Any defects could delay operations at our facilities, lead to regulatory fines, or halt or discontinue manufacturing indefinitely.

Our manufacturing processes rely on complex three-dimensional scanning, geometrical manipulation and modeling technologies, and sophisticated 3D printing. Since our clear aligners and retainers are designed for individual members, we manufacture them to fill prescriptions rather than maintaining inventories. If demand for our clear aligners and retainers exceeds our manufacturing capacity, we could develop a substantial backlog of member orders, or would otherwise need to outsource to other manufacturers, which would affect our profitability.

Our manufacturing facilities are subject to periodic regulatory inspections by FDA and other regulatory agencies. If we fail in the future to maintain facilities in accordance with applicable Quality System Regulations enforced by FDA or other regulatory requirements, our manufacturing process could be suspended or terminated, which would have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

We are dependent on some international suppliers, which exposes us to foreign operational and political risks that may harm our business.

We rely on some third party suppliers in Europe and Asia who supply, among other things, certain of the technology and raw materials used in our manufacturing processes. Our reliance on international operations exposes us to risks and uncertainties, including: controlling quality of supplies; political, social, and economic instability; interruptions and limitations in telecommunication services; product or material delays or disruption; trade restrictions and changes in tariffs; import and export license requirements and restrictions; fluctuations in currency exchange rates; and potential adverse tax consequences. If any of these risks were to materialize, our results of operations may be harmed.

The majority of our operations are conducted in three geographic locations. Any disruption at our facilities could increase our expenses.

Aside from our SmileShops and popup locations, all of our business and manufacturing operations, in addition to some of our customer service operations, are conducted in and around Nashville, Tennessee, including a new manufacturing location in Columbia, Tennessee. All of our treatment planning operations, as well the remainder of our customer service operations, are conducted in Costa Rica. We take precautions to safeguard our facilities, including insurance, health and safety protocols, and off-site storage of computer data. However, a natural disaster, such as a fire, flood, or earthquake, could cause substantial delays in our operations, damage or destroy our manufacturing equipment or inventory, and cause us to incur additional expenses. The insurance we maintain against fires, floods, earthquakes, and other natural disasters may not be adequate to cover our losses in any particular case. Any material disruption could materially damage member and business partner relationships and subject us to significant reputational, financial, legal, and operational consequences.

Our information technology systems are critical to our business. System integration and implementation issues and system security risks could disrupt our operations, which could have a material adverse impact on our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

We depend on our information technology systems, as well as those of third parties, to develop products and services, operate our website, host and manage our services, store data, process transactions, respond to user inquiries, and manage our operations. Any material disruption or slowdown of our systems or those of third parties upon whom we depend, including a disruption or slowdown caused by our failure to successfully manage significant increases in user volume or successfully upgrade our or their systems, system failures, viruses, security breaches, or other causes, could cause information, including data related to orders, to be lost or delayed, which could result in delays in the delivery of products to members or lost sales, which could reduce demand for our products, harm our brand and reputation, and cause our revenue to decline. If changes in technology cause our information systems, or those of third parties upon whom we depend, to become obsolete, or if our or their information systems are inadequate to handle our growth, we could lose members, and our business, financial condition, and results of operations could be adversely affected.

There can be no assurance that our process of improving existing systems, developing new systems to support our expanding operations, integrating new systems, protecting confidential member information, and improving service levels will not be delayed or that additional systems issues will not arise in the future. Failure to adequately protect and maintain the integrity of our information systems and data may result in a material adverse effect on our business.

Our international operations subject us to additional costs and risks, and any future international expansion will subject us to additional costs and risks that may adversely impact our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

We have entered markets in Canada, Australia, the U.K., Ireland, and France. In 2022, we announced changes to our international operations and exited certain markets, and we are in the process of exiting France. There are significant costs and risks inherent in conducting business in international markets. Exiting, or attempts to expand into additional foreign markets, will be subject to new business risks, in addition to regulatory risks. In addition, expansion into foreign markets imposes additional burdens on our executive and administrative personnel, finance and legal teams, research and marketing teams, and general managerial resources.

We have limited experience with regulatory environments and market practices internationally, and we may not be able to penetrate or successfully operate in new markets. We may also encounter difficulty expanding into new international markets because of limited brand recognition in certain parts of the world, leading to delayed acceptance of our products and services by consumers in these new international markets. If we are unable to continue to expand internationally and manage the complexity of international operations successfully, our business, results of operations, and financial condition could be adversely affected. If our efforts to introduce our products and services into foreign markets are not successful, we may have expended significant resources without realizing the expected benefit. Ultimately, the investment required for expansion into foreign markets could exceed the results of operations generated from this expansion.

We are exposed to fluctuations in currency exchange rates and inflation, which could negatively affect our financial condition and results of operations.

Although the U.S. dollar is our reporting currency, a portion of our net revenues and net income is and will be generated in foreign currencies. Net revenues and net income generated outside of the U.S. are translated into U.S. dollars using exchange rates effective during the respective period and are affected by changes in exchange rates. As a result, negative movements in currency exchange rates against the U.S. dollar will adversely affect our net revenues and net income in our consolidated financial statements. The exchange rates between the U.S. dollar and foreign currencies have fluctuated substantially in recent years and may continue to fluctuate substantially in the future. We may in the future enter into currency hedging transactions in an effort to cover some of our exposure to foreign currency exchange fluctuations. These transactions may not operate to fully or effectively hedge our exposure to currency fluctuations, and, under certain circumstances, these transactions could have an adverse effect on our business and financial condition.

We have also experienced rising inflationary pressures since 2021 and expect such pressures to continue into 2023. Inflationary factors, such as increases in our cost of revenues, advertising costs and other selling and operating expenses, may adversely affect our operating results. A high rate of inflation may have an adverse effect on our ability to maintain and increase our gross margin or to maintain current levels of selling, general, administrative and other operating expenses as a percentage of revenues if the selling price of our products does not increase with these increased costs.

The results of the U.K.'s withdrawal from the E.U. may have a negative effect on global economic conditions, financial markets, and our business.

On January 31, 2020 the U.K. left the European Union (the "E.U.") (commonly referred to as "Brexit") and entered a transition period with the E.U. On December 30, 2020, the U.K. and the E.U. entered into an agreement regarding their future relationship, the Trade and Cooperation Agreement (the "trade agreement"). The trade agreement offers U.K. and E.U. companies preferential access to each others' markets, ensuring imported goods will be free of tariffs and quotas (subject to rules of origin requirements). However, significant political and economic uncertainties remain in connection with the ultimate future of the U.K. and its relationship with the E.U. The uncertainty surrounding the terms following Brexit could negatively impact markets and cause weaker macroeconomic conditions that could continue for the foreseeable future. Adverse macroeconomic consequences, such as deterioration in economic conditions, may negatively impact future sales of our products and, particularly in European countries, may negatively impact our international expansion, either of which could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

We depend on key personnel to operate our business, and if we are unable to retain and attract key personnel, we may be unable to pursue business opportunities or develop our products.

We are dependent on the key employees in our clinical engineering, technology development, sales, training, marketing, and management teams. The loss of the services provided by certain of these individuals may significantly delay or prevent the achievement of our business objectives and could harm our business. Our future success will also depend on our ability to identify, recruit, train, and retain additional qualified personnel. We may not be successful in retaining our key personnel or their services, or in attracting and retaining personnel with the advanced qualifications necessary for the further development of our business. If we are unable to retain and attract key personnel, our business could be materially harmed.

If we are unable to accurately predict our volume growth and fail to hire a sufficient number of technicians in advance of such demand, the delivery time of our products could be delayed, which could adversely affect our results of operations.

Treatment planning, a key step leading to our manufacturing process, relies on sophisticated computer technology requiring new technicians to undergo an extensive training process. Training setup technicians takes several weeks, and it takes several months for a new technician to achieve his or her full capacity. As a result, if we are unable to accurately predict our volume growth, we may not have a sufficient number of trained technicians to deliver our products within the time frame our members expect. Such a delay could cause us to lose existing members or fail to attract new members. This could cause a decline in our net revenues and net income and could adversely affect our results of operations.

If we choose to acquire or invest in new businesses, products, or technologies, instead of developing them ourselves, these acquisitions or investments could disrupt our business and could result in the use of significant amounts of equity, cash, or a combination of both.

From time to time we may seek to acquire or invest in new businesses, products, or technologies, instead of developing them ourselves. Acquisitions and investments involve numerous risks, including:

- timing of regulatory approvals and clearances;
- the inability to complete the acquisition or investment;
- disruption of our ongoing businesses and diversion of management attention;
- difficulties in integrating the acquired entities, products, or technologies;
- risks associated with acquiring intellectual property;
- difficulties in operating the acquired business profitably;
- the inability to achieve anticipated synergies, cost savings, or growth;
- potential loss of key employees, particularly those of the acquired business;
- difficulties in transitioning and maintaining key partner, distributor, and supplier relationships;
- risks associated with entering markets in which we have no or limited prior experience;
- increased operating costs or reduced earnings;
- the use of significant amounts of cash, the incurrence of debt, and/or the assumption of significant liabilities; and
- dilutive issuances of equity securities, which may be sold at a discount to market price.

Any of these factors could materially harm our stock price, business, financial condition, and results of operations.

We offer a financing option to our members, which could adversely affect our financial results.

Other than in certain foreign jurisdictions where prohibited, we offer all of our members our SmilePay option, a financing plan that does not require a credit check. Approximately 60% of our members chose to finance their treatment through SmilePay for the year ended December 31, 2022. As of December 31, 2022, SmilePay amounted to approximately $187.0 million in net receivables and an associated delinquency rate of approximately 11% of revenue. We may experience an increase in payment defaults and uncollectible accounts and may be required to increase our reduction in revenue, which would adversely affect our net income. In addition, extended payment terms decrease our cash flow from operations.

Our SmilePay financing option subjects us to additional regulations and compliance and other costs.

Our SmilePay program subjects us to complex consumer financial protection laws and regulations, among others. We must comply with all applicable U.S. federal and state legal and regulatory regimes, and all applicable laws and regulatory regimes in foreign jurisdictions where we operate SmilePay, including but not limited to those governing consumer retail installment credit transactions. Certain U.S. federal and state laws and laws in foreign jurisdictions where we operate SmilePay generally regulate the rate or amount of finance charges and fees and require certain disclosures for consumer

finance transactions. If we fail to comply with applicable laws, regulations, rules, and guidance, our business could be adversely affected.

Compliance with these laws and regulatory requirements is costly and time-consuming and limits our operational flexibility. Further, failure to comply with these laws and regulatory requirements may, among other things, limit our ability to collect all or part of the balance owing on a member's SmilePay account. As a result, we may not be able to collect on unpaid principal or finance charges. In addition, non-compliance could subject us to damages, revocation of required licenses or registrations, class action lawsuits, administrative enforcement actions, rescission rights held by investors in securities offerings, and civil and criminal liability, which may harm our business and may result in members rescinding their SmilePay account agreements.

We currently contract with third-party providers to manage the administrative services and maintain regulatory compliance for our financing offers (including SmilePay), as well as to provide the enabling software. Some international regulations may limit the availability of SmilePay to members in certain jurisdictions without our first obtaining a license or engaging a third party to provide such financing, thereby limiting our profitability on sales to members in those locations. While both we and our provider are in the process of obtaining licenses in these jurisdictions, we cannot guarantee that the necessary licenses will be obtained by us or our provider on a timely basis or at all.

Refunds and cancellations could harm our business.

We allow our customers to return aligners, subject to our Smile Guarantee refund policy, which allows any member to return their aligners for any reason within the first 30 days of their treatment and receive a full refund. Additionally, members who follow their treatment plan and do not love their smile may return the remainder of their aligners for a pro-rated refund based on the number of aligners used or get additional aligners, at no additional cost, to address their treatment concerns. At the time of sale, we establish a reserve for aligner returns, based on historical experience and expected future returns, which is recorded as a reduction of sales. If we experience a substantial increase in refunds, our cancellation reserve levels might not be sufficient and our business, operating results, and financial condition could be harmed.

Our subsidiaries have recently incurred secured debt, which may adversely impact our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

SPV and SmileDirectClub, LLC have entered into a secured term loan agreement among SPV, as borrower, SmileDirectClub, LLC, as the seller and servicer, the lenders from time to time party thereto, and HPS Investment Partners, LLC, as administrative agent and collateral agent (as disclosed herein) (the "Loan Agreement"). The terms of the Loan Agreement contain various restrictions and covenants which could, among others, have such adverse consequences as to:

- limit our subsidiaries' ability to obtain additional financing for working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions and other general corporate requirements;
- limit our flexibility in planning for, or reacting to, changes in our business and the industry in which we operate; and
- place us at a competitive disadvantage compared to competitors that may have proportionately less debt and greater financial resources.

Our subsidiaries have substantial debt which is secured by the assets of our wholly-owned special purpose subsidiary, SPV, and guaranteed on a limited basis by SmileDirectClub, LLC and SDC Financial LLC. If there is an occurrence of an uncured event of default, the lenders can foreclose on SPV's assets, which would significantly and adversely impact our value.

The outstanding debt under the Loan Agreement is secured by a first-priority security interest in all or substantially all of the assets of SPV and is guaranteed on a limited basis by SmileDirectClub, LLC and SDC Financial LLC. In the event SPV is unable to make payments on such secured debt, when due, the lenders may, among other things, foreclose on SPV's assets, which consists of certain receivables, cash, intellectual property and related assets. The ability to make payments on

outstanding debt under the Loan Agreement, when due, will depend upon the ability to make profit from operations and to raise additional funds through equity or debt financings. At the moment, we have no funding commitments that have not been previously disclosed, and we may not obtain any in the future.

The Loan Agreement contains covenants that restrict the business of our subsidiaries, the breach of which may result in the acceleration of debt outstanding under the Loan Agreement and could adversely affect our financial position or results of operations and our ability to raise additional capital.

The Loan Agreement contains various restrictions and covenants that limit our flexibility in operating our business, including restrictions on the ability of SPV to consolidate or merge, create liens, incur additional indebtedness, dispose of assets, make investments and pay dividends and other distributions. The Loan Agreement also provides that an event of default shall occur if, among other things, the minimum liquidity of SDC Financial LLC, its consolidated subsidiaries and certain other entities is less than $50 million as of the last day of any month.

If any of the covenants are breached such that an event of default occurs, the Loan Agreement allows the collateral agent to declare repayment of then outstanding debt to be immediately due. A breach of the covenants and acceleration of repayment obligations could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations and prospects.

Our outstanding debt instruments contain restrictions and covenants that may limit our operating flexibility and which, if violated, could result in the acceleration of the amounts due.

We may have outstanding debt instruments that contain financial ratios and certain other covenants, which we are required to satisfy. Complying with these restrictions and covenants may make it more difficult for us to successfully execute our business strategy. We may need to reduce the amount of our indebtedness outstanding from time to time in order to comply with such financial ratios, though no assurance can be given that we will be able to do so.

Our failure to maintain required financial ratios or our breach of the other restrictions or covenants under our debt instruments could result in an event of default under the applicable agreement. Such a default may allow our lenders under the applicable agreement to accelerate all of our outstanding indebtedness and other amounts due and, if we do not pay these amounts, proceed against the collateral securing these obligations. In the future, such a default may also result in the acceleration of other indebtedness.

Changes affecting the availability of the London Interbank Offered Rate ('LIBOR') may have consequences for the Company that cannot yet reasonably be predicted.

We may have outstanding debt with variable interest rates based on LIBOR. In July 2017, the U.K.'s Financial Conduct Authority, which regulates LIBOR, announced it intended to phase out LIBOR by the end of 2021. The cessation date for submission and publication of rates for certain tenors of LIBOR has since been extended until mid-2023. Notwithstanding this extension, a joint statement by key regulatory authorities called on banks to cease entering into new contracts that use LIBOR as a reference rate as soon as practicable, but no later than December 31, 2021. In the U.S., the Alternative Reference Rates Committee recommended the Secured Overnight Financing Rate ("SOFR") as its preferred alternative replacement rare for LIBOR. While SOFR has gained initial market acceptance as a replacement if LIBOR in the U.S., it is not presently known whether any other alternative reference rates will also attain market acceptance as replacements of LIBOR. Any new benchmark rate will likely not replicate LIBOR exactly, which could impact our credit facilities. In addition, the overall financial markets may be disrupted as a result of the phase-out or replacement of LIBOR. Uncertainty as to the nature of such phase out and selection of an alternative reference rate, together with disruption in the financial markets, could increase in the cost of our variable rate indebtedness.

We may not generate sufficient cash flow to service our debt, pay our contractual obligations, and operate our business.

Our ability to make payments on our indebtedness and contractual obligations, and to fund our operations, depends on our future performance and financial results, which, to a certain extent, are subject to general economic, financial, competitive, regulatory, interest rate, and other factors that are beyond our control. Although senior management believes that we have and will continue to have sufficient liquidity, there can be no assurance that our business will generate sufficient cash flow from operations in the future to service our debt, pay our contractual obligations, and operate our business. In addition, the breach of certain covenants or restrictions in certain of our debt instruments would permit the lenders to declare all borrowings thereunder to be immediately due and payable and, if provided for in the future, cross default provisions may entitle our other lenders to accelerate their loans.

Our effective tax rate may vary significantly from period to period.

Various internal and external factors may have favorable or unfavorable effects on our future effective tax rate. These factors include, but are not limited to, changes in tax laws both within and outside the U.S., regulations and/or rates, structural changes in our business, new or changes to accounting pronouncements, non-deductible goodwill impairments, changing interpretations of existing tax laws or regulations, changes in the relative proportions of revenues and income before taxes in the various jurisdictions in which we operate that have differing statutory tax rates, the future levels of tax benefits of equity-based compensation, changes in overall levels of pretax earnings, or changes in the valuation of our deferred tax assets and liabilities. Additionally, we could be challenged by state and local tax authorities as to the propriety of our sales tax compliance, and our results could be materially impacted by these compliance determinations.

In addition, our effective tax rate may vary significantly depending on our stock price. The tax effects of the accounting for share-based compensation may significantly impact our effective tax rate from period to period. In periods in which our stock price is higher than the grant price of the share-based compensation vesting in that period, we will recognize excess tax benefits that will decrease our effective tax rate. In periods in which our stock price is lower than the grant price of the share-based compensation vesting in that period, our effective tax rate may increase. The amount and value of share-based compensation issued relative to our earnings in a particular period will also affect the magnitude of the impact of share-based compensation on our effective tax rate. These tax effects are dependent on our stock price, which we do not control, and a decline in our stock price could significantly increase our effective tax rate and adversely affect our financial results.

Climate change and related public focus from regulators and various stakeholders could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, cash flows and results of operations.

Climate change is receiving ever increasing attention worldwide. Many scientists, legislators and others attribute global warming to increased levels of greenhouse gases, which has led to significant legislative and regulatory efforts to limit greenhouse gas emissions. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (“EPA”) has published findings that emissions of carbon dioxide, methane, and other greenhouse gases present an endangerment to public health and the environment because emissions of such gases are, according to the EPA, contributing to the warming of the earth's atmosphere and other climate change.

Climate changes, such as extreme weather conditions, decreased water availability and overall temperature shifts, may have physical impacts on our facilities and operations, as well as those of our third-party manufacturers. Such impacts are geographically specific, highly uncertain and may result in diminished availability of materials, indirect financial risks passed through our supply chain and adverse impacts on our financial performance and operations.

These considerations may also result in international, national, regional or local legislative or regulatory responses to mitigate greenhouse gas emissions. Timing and scope of any regulations are uncertain, and regulation could result in additional costs of compliance, increased energy, transportation and materials costs and other additional expenses to improve the efficiency of our products, facilities and operations.

Relatedly, the expectations of our customers, stockholders and employees have heightened in areas such as the environment, social matters and corporate governance. Increased public focus requires us to provide information on our approach to these issues, including certain climate-related matters such as mitigating greenhouse gas emissions, and continuously monitor related reporting standards. A failure to adequately meet stakeholder expectations may result in a loss of business, diminished ability to successfully market our products to new and existing customers, diluted market valuation or an inability to attract and retain key personnel.

Risks Related to Legal and Regulatory Matters

Our business could be adversely affected by ongoing professional and legal challenges to our business model or by new state actions restricting our ability to provide our products and services in certain states.

A number of dental and orthodontic professionals and their trade associations believe that clear aligners are appropriate for only a limited percentage of their patients and that in person office visits are required. National and state dental associations and dental boards have issued statements and taken out advertisements discouraging use of orthodontics using a teledentistry platform and have filed sham petitions or complaints with governmental agencies. These same trade associations have also engaged in a coordinated campaign to generate legislation precluding or otherwise restricting teledentistry for orthodontic care. Some state legislators have proposed legislation designed to preclude or significantly limit teledentistry. Increased market acceptance of our remote clear aligner treatment may depend, in part, upon the recommendations of dental and orthodontic professionals and associations, as well as other factors including effectiveness, safety, ease of use, reliability, aesthetics, and price compared to competing products.

Furthermore, our ability to conduct business in each state is dependent, in part, upon that particular state's treatment of remote healthcare and that state dental board's regulation of the practice of dentistry, each of which is subject to changing political, regulatory, and other influences. There is a risk that state authorities may find that our contractual relationships with our doctors violate laws and regulations prohibiting the corporate practice of dentistry, which generally bar the practice of dentistry by entities. Some state dental boards established rules in a manner that purports to limit or restrict our ability to conduct our business as currently conducted. The Georgia Board of Dentistry passed a rule that requires a licensed dentist to be present when 3D oral images are taken by a dental assistant. In California, an investigator for the California Dental Board has engaged in what we believe to be a pattern of anticompetitive conduct to interfere with our operations in that state. In Georgia, and California, we have pending lawsuits in Federal court against the dental boards and their individual members alleging, among other things, violations of the Sherman Act, and we will continue to pursue litigation where appropriate to combat anticompetitive or otherwise illegal behavior targeting our business model. The Federal Trade Commission and Department of Justice have filed joint Amicus Brief on our behalf in the California, and Georgia lawsuits. In addition, a national orthodontic association continues to meet with various dental boards, legislatures and regulatory bodies across the country in an effort to advocate for new laws, rules and regulations, as well as investigations and complaints being filed, that could have the effect of interfering with our business model. Although, none of these efforts have resulted in any laws, rules and regulations being passed to date that would materially impact our business model, it is possible that the laws, rules and regulations governing the practice of dentistry and orthodontics in one or more states may change or be interpreted in a manner unfavorable to our business and such lobbying efforts has resulted in the Office of Attorney General for the District of Columbia filing a complaint against the Company alleging violations of its Consumer Protection Act. If adverse laws or regulations are adopted or any such claims are successful, and we were unable to adapt our business model accordingly, our operations in such states would be disrupted, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

We are the subject of purported class action lawsuits and other material litigation, and additional litigation may be brought against us in the future.

In September 2019, a putative class action on behalf of a consumer and three orthodontists was brought against the Company in the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee, Ciccio, et al. v. SmileDirectClub, LLC, et al., Case No. 3:19-cv-00845 (M.D. Tenn.). The Plaintiffs assert claims for breach of warranty, false advertising under the Lanham Act, common law fraud, and various state consumer protection statutes relating to the Company's advertising. Following a

proactive voluntary dismissal by the majority of consumer plaintiffs, one consumer has since sought to rejoin the Middle District of Tennessee litigation or, in the alternative, to intervene, which the Court granted. That ruling has been appealed, and the Court stayed the consumer claims pending the appeal. On June 25, 2021, the appellate court reversed the district court and remanded with instructions to order the intervening plaintiff to mandatory binding arbitration. On September 20, 2022, the administrative AAA arbitrator confirmed that the consumer claims are subject to binding arbitration on an individual basis. All remaining consumer claims remain stayed. On October 13, 2021, the Court entered an Amended Scheduling Order, effectively staying merits discovery on the provider plaintiff claims, and setting deadlines of March 30, 2022, to complete class certification fact discovery and September 2, 2022, to complete briefing on motions regarding class certification. Class certification fact discovery was substantially completed on March 30, 2022 with the briefing on class certification currently stayed pending further discovery being sought by the Company. The Company denies any alleged wrongdoing and intends to defend against this action vigorously.

From September to December 2019, a number of purported stockholder class action complaints were filed in the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee and in state courts in Tennessee, Michigan, and New York against the Company, members of the Company's board of directors, certain of its current or former officers, and the underwriters of its IPO. The following complaints have been filed to date: Mancour v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-1169-IV (TN Chancery Court filed 9/27/19), Vang v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19c2316 (TN Circuit Court filed 9/30/19), Fernandez v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19c2371 (TN Circuit Court filed 10/4/19), Wei Wei v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-1254-III (TN Chancery Court filed 10/18/19), Andre v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-cv-12883 (E.D. Mich. filed 10/2/19), Ginsberg v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-cv-09794 (S.D.N.Y. filed 10/23/19), Franchi v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-cv-962 (M.D. Tenn. filed 10/29/19), Nurlybayev v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-177527-CB (Oakland County, MI Circuit Court filed 10/30/19), Sasso v. Katzman, et al., No. 657557/2019 (NY Supreme Court filed 12/18/19), Nurlybayev v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., No. 652603/2020 (Supreme Ct. N.Y. Cty. filed June 19, 2020). The complaints all allege, among other things, that the registration statement filed with the SEC on August 16, 2019, and accompanying amendments, and the Prospectus filed with the SEC on September 13, 2019, in connection with the Company's initial public offering were inaccurate and misleading, contained untrue statements of material facts, omitted to state other facts necessary to make the statements made not misleading, and omitted to state material facts required to be stated therein. The complaints seek unspecified money damages, other equitable relief, and attorneys' fees and costs. All the actions are in the preliminary stages. The Company denies any alleged wrongdoing and is vigorously defending against these actions.

In December 2019, the Fernandez, Vang, Mancour and Wei Wei actions were consolidated and re-captioned In re SmileDirectClub, Inc. Securities Litigation, 19-1169-IV (Davidson County, TN Chancery Court). Plaintiffs filed a consolidated amended complaint on December 20, 2019, and Defendants moved to stay or dismiss the action on February 10, 2020. On June 4, 2020, the court denied that motion. Defendants subsequently moved for permission to seek an interlocutory appeal of that decision. On June 22, 2020, the court granted that motion. On August 3, 2020, Defendants filed an application for interlocutory appeal with the court of appeals, which was denied. On September 21, 2020, Defendants filed an application for interlocutory appeal with the Tennessee Supreme Court, which was denied. On October 2, 2020, Plaintiffs moved for class certification, which Defendants opposed on January 25, 2021. On April 28, 2021, the court ruled in favor of the Plaintiffs class certification. The Company filed its notice of appeal on May 4, 2021. That appeal was fully briefed as of October 6, 2021. All trial court proceedings are stayed during the pendency of the appeal. On March 18, 2022, the Tennessee Court of Appeals dismissed the Plaintiff's Section 12(a)(2) claims but affirmed the grant of certification. On October 24, 2022, Plaintiffs in the Franchi action described below moved to intervene in this action, and their motion was denied on December 6, 2022. The case is currently in discovery and the deadline for completion of fact discovery is June 13, 2023.

The Andre and Ginsberg actions were transferred to the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee, where they were consolidated with the Franchi action. Plaintiffs filed a consolidated amended complaint on February 21, 2020, and Defendants moved to dismiss the action on March 23, 2020. That motion remains pending. While that motion was pending, the parties stipulated to allow Plaintiffs to file a further amended complaint, which Plaintiffs filed on March 31, 2021. Defendants' motion to dismiss the new complaint was due on or before May 14, 2021. That motion was fully briefed as of July 19, 2021. On September 30, 2022, the Court denied in part and granted in part Defendants' motion to dismiss. Defendants filed an answer to the second amended complaint on November 14, 2022. The court held an initial case

management conference on December 2, 2022. The case is currently in discovery and the deadline for completion of fact discovery is July 10, 2023.

In the Nurlybayev action, on January 10, 2020, the Defendants moved to dismiss or stay the entire action in favor of the related actions pending in Tennessee, which motion was granted and the case was dismissed on February 26, 2020. On June 19, 2020, Plaintiff Nurlybayev filed a substantially similar action in New York state court. On August 21, 2020, Defendants filed a motion to dismiss that action, which the Court granted on May 25, 2021. On January 31, 2022, Plaintiff filed a notice of appeal. On March 2, 2022, we filed our opposition. Plaintiff filed their reply brief on March 11, 2022. On April 5, 2022, the Court heard argument on the appeal and on May 25, 2022 the Court of Appeals granted our motion to dismiss. Plaintiff filed a notice of appeal, perfected his appeal on January 21, 2022, and the First Department affirmed dismissal of the action on May 5, 2022.

In the Sasso action, Plaintiff agreed to stay the action pending resolution of any motions to dismiss in any of the related actions. The Court so-ordered the parties' stipulation to that effect on January 22, 2020. On November 4, 2022, and again on February 2, 2023, the parties agreed to extend the stay and will provide an update to the Court on May 3, 2023.

On January 3, 2023, Align Technology, Inc. filed a complaint against the Company and certain of its officers and founders in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California purporting to set forth claims for alleged false advertising in violation of the Lanham Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1125(A); Racketeer & Corrupt Organizations Act, 18 U.S.C. § 1964(c); California Business & Prof. Code, §§ 17200, 17500, et seq.; and Arizona Anti-Racketeering Statute, A.R.S. § 13-2314. The Company denies the allegations and intends to vigorously defend its position in this litigation.

While we believe these claims to be without merit, there can be no assurance that additional claims alleging the same or similar facts will not be filed. Any litigation could result in substantial costs and a diversion of management's attention and resources.

Our success depends in part on our proprietary technology, and if we are unable to successfully enforce our intellectual property rights, our competitive position may be harmed.

Our success will depend in part on our ability to maintain existing intellectual property and to obtain and maintain further intellectual property protection for our products and services, both in the U.S. and in other countries. We attempt to protect our intellectual property rights through a combination of patent, trademark, copyright, and trade secret laws, as well as licensing agreements and third-party confidentiality and assignment agreements. Our inability to do so could harm our competitive position. We have 40 active U.S. patents, and numerous pending U.S. and global patent applications.

We rely on our portfolio of issued and pending patent applications in the U.S. and other countries to protect a large part of our intellectual property and our competitive position; however, our currently pending or future patent filings may not result in the issuance of patents. While we generally apply for patents in those countries where we intend to make, have made, use, or sell patented products, we may not accurately predict all of the countries where patent protection will ultimately be desirable. If we fail to timely file for a patent, we may be precluded from doing so at a later date. Additionally, any patents issued to us may be challenged, invalidated, held unenforceable, circumvented, or may not be sufficiently broad to prevent third parties from producing competing products similar in design to our products. In addition, any protection afforded by foreign patents may be more limited than that provided under U.S. patent and intellectual property laws. There can be no assurance that any of our patents, any patents licensed to us, or any patents which we may be issued in the future, will provide us with a competitive advantage or afford us protection against infringement by others, or that the patents will not be successfully challenged or circumvented by third parties, including our competitors. Further, there can be no assurance that we will have adequate resources to enforce our patents.

We also rely on protection of copyright, trade secrets, know-how, and confidential and proprietary information. We generally enter into confidentiality and non-compete agreements with our employees, consultants, and collaborative partners upon their commencement of a relationship with us. However, these agreements may not provide meaningful protection against the unauthorized use or disclosure of our trade secrets or other confidential information, and adequate remedies may

not exist if unauthorized use or disclosure were to occur. The exposure of our trade secrets and other proprietary information would impair our competitive advantages and could have a material adverse effect on our operating results, financial condition, and future growth prospects. In particular, a failure to protect our proprietary rights might allow competitors to copy our technology, which could adversely affect our pricing and market share. Further, other parties may independently develop substantially equivalent know-how and technology.

We rely on our trademarks, trade names, and brand names to distinguish our products and services from the products and services of our competitors, and have registered or applied to register many of these trademarks. There can be no assurance that our trademark applications will be approved. Third parties may also oppose our trademark applications, or otherwise challenge our use of the trademarks. In the event that our trademarks are successfully challenged, we could be forced to rebrand our products and services, which could result in loss of brand recognition, and could require us to devote resources advertising and marketing new brands. Further, there can be no assurance that competitors will not infringe our trademarks, or that we will have adequate resources to enforce our trademarks. We also license third parties to use our trademarks. In an effort to preserve our trademark rights, we enter into license agreements with these third parties, which govern the use of our trademarks and require our licensees to abide by quality control standards with respect to the goods and services that they provide under our trademarks. Although we make efforts to police the use of our trademarks by our licensees, there can be no assurance that these efforts will be sufficient to ensure that our licensees abide by the terms of their licenses. In the event that our licensees fail to do so, our trademark rights could be diluted.

Litigation, interferences, oppositions, re-exams, inter partes reviews, post-grant reviews, or other proceedings are, have been, and may in the future be necessary in some instances to determine the validity and scope of certain of our proprietary rights, and in other instances to determine the validity, scope, or non-infringement of certain proprietary rights claimed by third parties to be pertinent to the manufacture, use, or sale of our products or provision of our services. These types of proceedings are unpredictable and may be protracted, expensive, and distracting to management. The outcome of such proceedings could adversely affect the validity and scope of our patent or other proprietary rights, hinder our ability to manufacture and market our products and provide our services, require us to seek a license for the infringed product or technology, or result in the assessment of significant monetary damages. An unfavorable ruling could include monetary damages or, in cases where injunctive relief is sought, an injunction prohibiting us from selling our products or providing our services. Any of these results from litigation could adversely affect our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

If we infringe the patents or proprietary rights of other parties or are subject to an intellectual property infringement or misappropriation claim, our ability to grow our business may be severely limited.

Extensive litigation over patents and other intellectual property rights is common in the dental and orthodontic industry. We have in the past and may in the future be the subject of patent or other litigation. From time to time, we have received and may in the future receive letters from third parties drawing our attention to their patent rights. While we do not believe that we infringe upon any valid and enforceable rights that have been brought to our attention, and we take necessary steps to ensure that we do not infringe on the rights of others, there may be other more pertinent rights of which we are presently unaware. The defense and prosecution of intellectual property suits, interference proceedings, and related legal and administrative proceedings could result in substantial expense to us and significant diversion of effort by our technical and management personnel. An adverse determination of any litigation or interference proceeding to which we may become a party could subject us to significant liabilities. An adverse determination of this nature could also put our patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly, or require us to seek licenses from third parties. Licenses may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all, in which event, our business would be materially adversely affected.

Complying with regulations enforced by FDA and other regulatory authorities is expensive and time-consuming, and failure to comply could result in substantial penalties.

Some of our products are considered medical devices, which are subject to extensive regulation in the U.S. and internationally. FDA regulations are wide ranging and govern, among other things:

- product design, development, manufacturing, and testing;
- product labeling;
- product storage;
- product safety;
- pre-market clearance or approval;
- complaint handling and corrective actions;
- recordkeeping procedures and postmarket surveillance;
- advertising and promotion; and
- product sales and distribution.

The regulations to which we are subject are complex. Regulatory changes could result in restrictions on our ability to carry on or expand our operations, higher than anticipated costs, or lower than anticipated sales. Our failure to comply with applicable regulatory requirements could result in enforcement action by FDA or state agencies, which may include any of the following sanctions:

- warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees, and civil penalties;
- repair, replacement, refunds, recall, or seizure of our products;
- operating restrictions or partial suspension or total shutdown of production;
- refusing our requests for 510(k) clearance or pre-market approval of new products, new intended uses, or modifications to existing products;
- withdrawing clearance or pre-market approvals that have already been granted; and
- criminal prosecution.

If any of these events were to occur, they could harm our business.

We may not receive the necessary authorizations to market our new products, and any failure to timely do so may adversely affect our ability to grow our business.

Our future success will also depend on our ability to obtain regulatory approval or clearance of certain new products. Before we can sell a new medical device in the U.S., or market a new use of, new claim for, or significant modification to a legally marketed device, we must first obtain either clearance under Section 510(k) of the FD&C Act or other FDA authorizations, if applicable, unless an exemption applies.

In the 510(k) clearance process, before a device may be marketed, FDA must determine that a proposed device is "substantially equivalent" to a legally-marketed "predicate" device. To be "substantially equivalent," the proposed device must have the same intended use as the predicate device, and either have the same technological characteristics as the predicate device or have different technological characteristics, not raise different questions of safety or effectiveness than the predicate device, and be as safe and as effective as the predicate device. The 510(k) clearance process can be expensive and uncertain and can take from three to 12 months, but may last significantly longer. Clinical data may be required in connection with an application for 510(k) clearance. Furthermore, even if we are granted regulatory clearances or approvals, they may include limitations on the indications for use or intended uses of the device, which may limit the market for the device.

We market our clear aligners in the U.S. pursuant to 510(k) clearance.

FDA can delay, limit, or deny 510(k) clearance, or other approval or reclassification, of a device for many reasons, including:

- we may be unable to demonstrate to FDA's satisfaction that the products or modifications are substantially equivalent to a proposed predicate device or safe and effective for their intended uses;
- we may be unable to demonstrate that the clinical and other benefits of the device outweigh the risks; and
- the applicable regulatory authority may identify deficiencies in our submissions or in the facilities or processes of our third party contract manufacturers.

Any delay or failure to obtain necessary regulatory clearances or approvals could harm our business.

In addition, FDA may change its policies, adopt additional regulations, revise existing regulations, or take other actions, or Congress may enact different or additional statutory requirements, which may prevent or delay clearance of our future products under development or impact our ability to modify our currently marketed products on a timely basis. Such policy, statutory, or regulatory changes could impose additional requirements upon us that could delay our ability to obtain new 510(k) clearances, increase the costs of compliance, or restrict our ability to maintain our current marketing authorizations.

We will also need to obtain regulatory approval in other foreign jurisdictions in which we plan to market and sell our products, although we already have regulatory approval in Canada, Australia, the U.K., Ireland, France, and the E.U. The time required to obtain registrations or approvals, if required by other countries, may be longer than that required for FDA clearance, and requirements for such registrations, clearances, or approvals may significantly differ from FDA requirements. If we modify our products, we may need to apply for additional regulatory approvals before we are permitted to sell the modified product. In addition, we may not continue to meet the quality and safety standards required to maintain the authorizations that we have received. If we are unable to maintain our authorizations in a particular country, we will no longer be able to sell the applicable product in that country.

Failure to comply with these rules, regulations, self-regulatory codes, circulars, and orders could result in significant civil and criminal penalties and costs and could have a material adverse impact on our business. Also, these regulations may be interpreted or applied by a prosecutorial, regulatory, or judicial authority in a manner that could require us to make changes in our operations or incur substantial defense and settlement expenses. Even unsuccessful challenges by regulatory authorities or private relators could result in reputational harm and the incurring of substantial costs. In addition, many of these laws are vague or indefinite and have not been interpreted by the courts and have been subject to frequent modification and varied interpretation by prosecutorial and regulatory authorities, increasing compliance risks.

Certain modifications to our products may require new 510(k) clearance or other marketing authorizations and may require us to recall or cease marketing our products.

Once a medical device is permitted to be legally marketed in the U.S. pursuant to a 510(k) clearance, a manufacturer may be required to notify FDA of certain modifications to the device. Manufacturers determine in the first instance whether a

change to a product requires a new premarket submission, but FDA may review any manufacturer's decision. FDA may not agree with our decisions regarding whether new clearances or approvals are necessary. We have made modifications to our products in the past and have determined, based on our review of the applicable FDA regulations and guidance, that in certain instances new 510(k) clearances or other premarket submissions were not required. We may make similar modifications or add additional features in the future that we believe do not require a new 510(k) clearance. If FDA disagrees with our determinations and requires us to submit new 510(k) notifications, we may be required to cease marketing or to recall the modified product until we obtain clearance or approval, and we may be subject to significant regulatory fines or penalties.

Our products must be manufactured in accordance with federal, state, and international regulations, and we could be forced to recall our products or terminate production if we fail to comply with these regulations.

The methods used in, and the facilities used for, the manufacture of our products must comply with FDA's Quality System Regulation which is a complex regulatory scheme that covers the procedures and documentation of, among other requirements, the design, testing, validation, verification, complaint handling, production, process controls, quality assurance, labeling, supplier evaluation, packaging, handling, storage, distribution, installation, servicing, and shipping of medical devices. Furthermore, we are required to verify that our suppliers maintain facilities, procedures, and operations that comply with our quality standards and applicable regulatory requirements. FDA enforces the Quality System Regulation through, among other oversight methods, periodic announced or unannounced inspections of medical device manufacturing facilities, which may include the facilities of contractors, suppliers, or contract manufacturing organizations. Our products are also subject to similar state regulations as well as similar laws and regulations of foreign countries. Our failure to comply with the Quality System Regulation or similar requirements could result in enforcement actions, sanctions, recalls, detentions, seizures, or similar market actions with respect to our products, among other potential consequences. If any of these or other events occur, there could be a negative impact on the supply of our products, our reputation could be harmed, we could be exposed to product liability claims, and we could lose customers and suffer reduced revenue and increased costs.

Our products may cause or contribute to adverse medical events that we are required to report to FDA and other governmental authorities, and if we fail to do so, we would be subject to sanctions that could harm our reputation, business, results of operations, and financial condition. The discovery of serious safety issues with our products, or a recall of our products either voluntarily or at the direction of FDA or another governmental authority, could have a negative impact on us.

We are required to timely file various reports with FDA, including reports required by the medical device reporting regulations which require us to report to FDA when we receive or become aware of information that reasonably suggests that one of our products may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or malfunctioned in a way that, if the malfunction were to recur to the device or a similar device that we market, could cause or contribute to a death or serious injury. If we fail to comply with our reporting obligations, FDA or other governmental authorities could take action, including warning letters, untitled letters, administrative actions, criminal prosecution, imposition of civil monetary penalties, revocation of our device clearance, seizure of our products, or delay in clearance of future products. FDA and certain foreign regulatory bodies have the authority to require the recall of commercialized products under certain circumstances.

A government-mandated or voluntary recall by us could occur as a result of an unacceptable risk to health, component failures, malfunctions, manufacturing defects, labeling or design deficiencies, packaging defects, or other deficiencies, or failures to comply with applicable regulations. If we do not adequately address problems associated with our devices, we may face additional regulatory requirements or enforcement action, including required new marketing authorizations, FDA warning letters, product seizure, injunctions, administrative penalties, or civil or criminal proceedings.

We may initiate voluntary withdrawals, removals, or corrections for our products in the future that we determine do not require notification of FDA. If FDA disagrees with our determinations, it could require us to report those actions and we may be subject to enforcement action. A future recall announcement or other corrective action could harm our financial results and reputation, potentially lead to product liability claims against us, require the dedication of our time and capital, and negatively affect our sales.

In addition, FDA's and other regulatory authorities' policies may change, and additional government regulations may be enacted that could prevent, limit, or delay regulatory approval of our product candidates. For example, in November 2018, FDA announced that it plans to develop proposals to drive manufacturers utilizing the 510(k) pathway toward the use of newer predicates. It is unclear the extent to which any proposals, if adopted, could impose additional regulatory requirements on us that could delay our ability to obtain new 510(k) clearances, increase the costs of compliance, or restrict our ability to maintain our current clearances.

We also cannot predict the likelihood, nature, or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative or executive action, either in the U.S. or abroad. For example, the Trump Administration previously enacted several executive actions that could impose significant burdens on, or otherwise materially delay, FDA's ability to engage in routine regulatory and oversight activities. It is difficult to predict how these executive actions and executive actions that may be taken under the Biden Administration may affect FDA's ability to exercise its regulatory authority. If these executive actions impose constraints on FDA's ability to engage in oversight and implementation activities in the normal course, our business may be negatively impacted.

Extensive and changing government regulation of the healthcare industry may be expensive to comply with and exposes us to the risk of substantial government penalties.

Participants in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive and frequently changing regulations under numerous laws administered by governmental entities at the federal, state, and local levels, some of which are, and others of which may be, applicable to our business, including certain federal and state healthcare laws and regulations pertaining to fraud and abuse, such as anti-kickback, self-referral, false claims, and consumer protection laws.

Further, the healthcare industry has changed significantly over time, and we expect the industry to continue to evolve. By way of example, in response to perceived increases in health care costs, the Affordable Care Act was signed into law in March 2010, which, among other things, contained certain provisions designed to generate the revenues necessary to fund the healthcare coverage expansions provided for therein. The law has been subject to continuous legislative and regulatory changes and court challenges, with dissenting U.S. Supreme Court judges even asserting it is unconstitutional in June of 2021. On January 28, 2021, President Biden issued an executive order to initiate a special enrollment period from February 15, 2021 through May 15, 2021 for purposes of obtaining health insurance coverage through the Affordable Care Act marketplace. The executive order also instructed certain governmental agencies to review and reconsider their existing policies and rules that limit access to healthcare, including among others, reexamining Medicaid demonstration projects and policies that create unnecessary barriers to obtaining access to health insurance coverage through Medicaid or the Affordable Care Act. It is unclear how other such litigation and the healthcare reform measures of the Biden Administration will impact the Affordable Care Act. The healthcare market itself is highly regulated and subject to changing political, economic, and regulatory influences. Complying with these laws and regulations could be expensive and time-consuming, and could increase our operating costs or reduce or eliminate certain of our sales and marketing activities or our revenues. If we or our operations are found to be in violation of any of these laws and regulations, we may be subject to penalties that could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

Changes in internet regulations could adversely affect our business.

Laws, rules, and regulations governing internet communications, advertising, and e-commerce are dynamic, and the extent of future government regulation is uncertain. Federal and state regulations govern various aspects of our online business, including intellectual property ownership and infringement, trade secrets, the distribution of electronic communications, marketing and advertising, user privacy and data security, search engines, and internet tracking technologies. Future taxation on the use of the internet or e-commerce transactions could also be imposed. Existing or future regulation or taxation could increase our operating expenses and expose us to significant liabilities.

Disruptions at the FDA and other government agencies caused by funding shortages or global health concerns could hinder their ability to hire, retain or deploy key leadership and other personnel, or otherwise prevent new or modified

products from being developed, cleared or approved or commercialized in a timely manner or at all, which could negatively impact our business.

The ability of the FDA to review and clear or approve new products can be affected by a variety of factors, including government budget and funding levels, statutory, regulatory, and policy changes, the FDA's ability to hire and retain key personnel and accept the payment of user fees, and other events that may otherwise affect the FDA's ability to perform routine functions. Average review times at the FDA have fluctuated in recent years as a result. In addition, government funding of other government agencies that fund research and development activities is subject to the political process, which is inherently fluid and unpredictable. Disruptions at the FDA and other agencies may also slow the time necessary for new medical devices or modifications to cleared or approved medical devices to be reviewed and/or cleared or approved by necessary government agencies, which could adversely affect our business. For example, over the last several years, including for 35 days beginning on December 22, 2018, the U.S. government has shut down several times and certain regulatory agencies, such as the FDA, have had to furlough critical FDA employees and stop critical activities.

Separately, in response to the COVID-19 pandemic, on March 10, 2020 the FDA announced its intention to postpone most inspections of foreign manufacturing facilities and products, and on March 18, 2020, the FDA temporarily postponed routine surveillance inspections of domestic manufacturing facilities. Subsequently, on July 10, 2020 the FDA announced its intention to resume certain on-site inspections of domestic manufacturing facilities subject to a risk-based prioritization system. The FDA intends to use this risk-based assessment system to identify the categories of regulatory activity that can occur within a given geographic area, ranging from mission critical inspections to resumption of all regulatory activities. Regulatory authorities outside the United States may adopt similar restrictions or other policy measures in response to the COVID-19 pandemic. If a prolonged government shutdown occurs, or if global health concerns continue to prevent the FDA or other regulatory authorities from conducting their regular inspections, reviews, or other regulatory activities, it could significantly impact the ability of the FDA or other regulatory authorities to timely review and process our regulatory submissions, which could have a material adverse effect on our business.

We are subject to data privacy and security laws and regulations governing our collection, use, disclosure, and storage of personally identifiable information, including personal health information, which may impose restrictions on us and our operations and subject us to penalties if we are unable to fully comply with such laws.

In order to provide our products and services, we routinely receive, process, transmit, and store PII, including personal health information, of individuals, as well as other financial, confidential, and proprietary information belonging to our members and third parties from which we obtain information (e.g., private insurance companies, financial institutions, etc.). The receipt, maintenance, protection, use, transmission, disclosure, and disposal of this information is regulated at the federal, state, international, and industry levels, and we may also have obligations with respect to this information pursuant to our contractual requirements. These laws, rules, and requirements are subject to frequent change. Compliance with new privacy and security laws, regulations, and requirements may result in increased operating costs and may constrain or require us to alter our business model or operations.

These laws and regulations include the Health Information Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, as amended by the HITECH, and their implementing regulations (referred to collectively as "HIPAA"). Among other requirements, HIPAA establishes privacy and security standards for the protection of PHI by health plans, healthcare clearinghouses, and certain healthcare providers, referred to as covered entities, which includes us, and the business associates with whom such covered entities contract for services. HIPAA imposes mandatory penalties for certain violations. Penalties will vary significantly depending on factors such as the date of the violation, whether the covered entity or business associate knew or should have known of the failure to comply, or whether the failure to comply was due to willful neglect. HIPAA also authorizes state attorneys general to file suit on behalf of their residents. Courts are able to award damages, costs, and attorneys' fees related to violations of HIPAA in such cases, and HIPAA standards have been used as the basis for duty of care claims in state civil suits, such as those for negligence or recklessness in the misuse or breach of PHI. In addition, HIPAA mandates that the HHS conduct periodic compliance audits of HIPAA covered entities or business associates for compliance with the HIPAA Privacy and Security Standards. HIPAA requires notification to affected individuals and HHS, and in certain cases media

outlets, for unauthorized acquisition, access, use, or disclosure of PHI, with certain exceptions related to unintentional or inadvertent use or disclosure by employees or authorized individuals.

We have members throughout all 50 states, and our solutions may contain healthcare information of customers located across all 50 states. Therefore, we may be subject to the privacy laws of each such state, which vary from state to state and, in some cases, can impose more restrictive requirements than federal law, such as the California Consumer Privacy Act ("CCPA") which went into effect in January 2020 and provides for enhanced consumer protections for California residents and statutory fines for data security breaches or other CCPA violations. Additionally, California voters approved the California Privacy Rights Act ("CPRA") on November 3, 2020, which will amend and expand the CCPA, including by providing consumers with additional rights with respect to their personal data. The CPRA came into effect on January 1, 2023, applying to information collected by businesses on or after January 1, 2022. The interplay of federal and state laws may be subject to varying interpretations by courts and government agencies, creating complex compliance issues for us and potentially exposing us to additional expense, adverse publicity, and liability. Further, as regulatory focus on privacy issues continues to increase and laws and regulations concerning the protection of personal information are proposed, enacted, or expanded or become more complex, the risks to our business could intensify. Changes in laws or regulations associated with the enhanced protection of certain types of sensitive data, such as PHI or PII, along with increased member demands for enhanced data security infrastructure, could greatly increase our cost of providing our products or services, decrease demand for our products or services, reduce our revenue, and/or subject us to additional liabilities.

We are also subject to PIPEDA and similar provincial laws in Canada. PIPEDA is the federal privacy law for private-sector organizations. It sets out the ground rules for how businesses must handle personal information in the course of commercial activity. Under PIPEDA, we must obtain an individual's consent when we collect, use, or disclose that individual's personal information. Individuals have the right to access and challenge the accuracy of their personal information held by an organization, and personal information may only be used for the purposes for which it was collected. If an organization intends to use personal information for another purpose, it must again obtain that individual's consent. Failure to comply with PIPEDA could result in significant fines and penalties or possible damage awards for the tort of public humiliation.

As we have expanded internationally, we are also subject to additional privacy rules, many of which, such as GDPR are significantly more stringent than those in the U.S. We also cannot determine the impact that future laws, regulations and standards may have on our business. Complying with these evolving obligations is costly, and any failure to comply could give rise to unwanted media attention and other negative publicity, damage our member and consumer relationships and reputation, and result in lost sales, fines, or lawsuits.

Noncompliance or findings of noncompliance with applicable laws, regulations, or requirements, or the occurrence of any privacy or security breach involving the misappropriation, loss, or other unauthorized disclosure of sensitive personal information, whether by us or by one of our third party service providers, could have a material adverse effect on our reputation and business, including, among other consequences, mandatory disclosure to the media, loss of existing or new members, significant increases in the cost of managing and remediating privacy or security incidents, and material fines, penalties, and litigation awards, any of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

We obtain and process a large amount of sensitive data. Our systems and networks may be subject to cybersecurity breaches and other disruptions that could compromise our information. Any real or perceived improper use of, disclosure of, or access to such data could harm our reputation and have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

We use, obtain, and process large amounts of confidential, sensitive, and proprietary data, including PHI subject to HIPAA and PII subject to state and federal privacy, security, and breach notification laws. The secure processing and maintenance of this information is critical to our operations and business strategy. If our or our members' confidential information is lost, improperly disclosed, or threatened to be disclosed, our insurance may not protect us from these risks.

Our website and information systems may be subject to computer viruses, break ins, phishing impersonation attacks, attempts to overload our servers with denial of service or other attacks, ransomware, and similar incidents or disruptions from unauthorized use of our computer systems, as well as unintentional incidents, including employee or system error, causing data leakage, any of which could lead to interruptions, delays, or website shutdowns, or could cause loss of critical data or the unauthorized disclosure, access, acquisition, alteration, or use of personal or other confidential information. It is critical that our facilities and infrastructure remain secure and are also perceived by the marketplace and our members to be secure. Our infrastructure may be vulnerable to physical break ins, computer viruses, programming errors or other technical malfunctions, hacking or phishing attacks by third parties, employee error or malfeasance, or similar disruptive problems. If we fail to meet our members' expectations regarding the security of healthcare information, we could incur significant liability and be subject to regulatory scrutiny and penalties and our reputation and competitive position could be impaired. Affected parties could initiate legal or regulatory action against us, which could cause us to incur significant expense and liability or result in orders forcing us to modify our business practices. We could be forced to expend significant resources investigating the cause of the incident, repairing system damage, increasing cybersecurity protection, and notifying and providing credit monitoring to affected individuals. Concerns over our privacy practices could adversely affect others' perception of us and deter members, advertisers, and partners from using our products. All of this could increase our expenses and divert the attention of our management and key personnel away from our business operations. Member care could suffer, and we could be liable if our systems fail to deliver correct information in a timely manner. Our insurance may not protect us from these risks.

For example, we experienced a systems outage that was caused by a cybersecurity incident on April 14, 2021. We promptly implemented a series of containment and remediation measures to address the incident, including temporarily isolating and shutting down affected systems and related manufacturing operations. We immediately mobilized our internal engineering security team and engaged leading forensic information technology firms to assist our investigation into the incident. Since the date of the incident, we have been actively managing the incident and, in consultation with our third-party advisors, investigating and seeking to understand and quantify the impact on the Company, our business operations and financial results. While the Company had no data loss from, or other loss of assets as a result of, the incident, including any exposure of customer or team member information, there is no guarantee that such loss will not occur in any future incident. The incident caused delays and disruptions to parts of our business, including treatment planning, manufacturing operations, and product delivery. While we maintain insurance coverage for certain expenses and potential liabilities that may be associated with this incident, and we plan to pursue coverage for all applicable expenses and liabilities, disputes over the extent of insurance coverage for claims are not uncommon, and there is no guarantee we will recognize any proceeds resulting from our claim. Furthermore, while we have not been the subject of any legal proceedings involving this incident, it is possible that we could be the subject of claims from persons alleging that they suffered damages from the incident. We also are in the process of implementing a variety of measures to further enhance our cybersecurity protections and minimize the impact of any future attack. However, cyber threats are constantly evolving, and there can be no guarantee that a future cyber event will not occur.

We are subject to consumer protection laws that regulate our marketing practices and prohibit unfair or deceptive acts or practices. Our actual or perceived failure to comply with such obligations could harm our business, and changes in such regulations or laws could require us to modify our products, marketing or advertising efforts.

In connection with the marketing or advertisement of our products and services, we could be, and occasionally are, the target of claims relating to false, misleading, deceptive, or otherwise noncompliant advertising or marketing practices, including under the auspices of the FTC, state consumer protection statutes, and the Australian Competition and Consumer Commission. If we rely on third parties to provide any marketing and advertising of our products and services, we could be liable for, or face reputational harm as a result of, their marketing practices if, for example, they fail to comply with applicable statutory and regulatory requirements.

If we are found to have breached any consumer protection, advertising, unfair competition, or other laws or regulations, we may be subject to enforcement actions that require us to change our marketing and business practices in a manner which may negatively impact us. This could also result in litigation, fines, penalties, and adverse publicity that could cause reputational harm and loss of member trust, which could have an adverse effect on our business.

We are subject to a number of risks related to the credit card and debit card payments we accept.

We accept payments through credit and debit card transactions. For credit and debit card payments, we pay interchange and other fees, which may increase over time. An increase in those fees may require us to increase the prices we charge and would increase our operating expenses, either of which could harm our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

If we or our processing vendors fail to maintain adequate systems for the authorization and processing of credit and debit card transactions, it could cause one or more of the major credit card companies to disallow our continued use of their payment products. In addition, if these systems fail to work properly and, as a result, we do not charge our members' credit or debit cards on a timely basis or at all, our business, revenue, results of operations, and financial condition could be harmed.

The payment methods that we offer also subject us to potential fraud and theft by criminals, who are becoming increasingly more sophisticated in exploiting weaknesses that may exist in the payment systems. If we fail to comply with applicable rules or requirements for the payment methods we accept, or if payment-related data is compromised due to a breach, we may be liable for significant costs incurred by payment card issuing banks and other third parties or subject to fines and higher transaction fees, or our ability to accept or facilitate certain types of payments may be impaired. In addition, our members could lose confidence in certain payment types, which may result in a shift to other payment types or potential changes to our payment systems that may result in higher costs. If we fail to adequately control fraudulent credit card transactions, we may face civil liability, diminished public perception of our security measures, and significantly higher card-related costs, each of which could harm our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

We are also subject to payment card association operating rules, certification requirements, and rules governing electronic funds transfers, which could change or be reinterpreted to make it more difficult for us to comply. We are required to comply with payment card industry security standards. Failing to comply with those standards may violate payment card association operating rules, federal and state laws and regulations, and the terms of our contracts with payment processors. Any failure to comply fully also may subject us to fines, penalties, damages, and civil liability, and may result in the loss of our ability to accept credit and debit card payments. Further, there is no guarantee that such compliance will prevent illegal or improper use of our payment systems or the theft, loss, or misuse of data pertaining to credit and debit cards, card holders, and transactions.

If we are unable to maintain our chargeback rate or refund rates at acceptable levels, our processing vendor may increase our transaction fees or terminate its relationship with us. Any increases in our credit and debit card fees could harm our results of operations, particularly if we elect not to raise our rates for our products and services to offset the increase. The termination of our ability to process payments on any major credit or debit card would significantly impair our ability to operate our business.

Issues related to the quality and safety of our products, raw materials, or packaging could cause a product recall or discontinuation or litigation, resulting in harm to our reputation and negatively impacting our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

Medical devices involve an inherent risk of product liability claims and associated adverse publicity. Our products generally maintain a good reputation with members, but issues related to quality and safety of products, raw materials, or packaging could jeopardize our image and reputation. We have received negative publicity related to these types of concerns, while we do not believe this publicity to be accurate characterizations of our products, or our members' view of our products, this might negatively impact demand for our products, cause production and delivery disruptions, or impact our stock price. We may need to recall or discontinue products if they become unfit for use. In addition, we could potentially be subject to litigation or government action, which could result in payment of fines or damages. Although we intend to continue to maintain product liability insurance, adequate insurance may not be available on acceptable terms, if at all, and may not provide adequate coverage against potential liabilities. Also, other types of claims asserted against us may not be covered by insurance. A successful claim brought against us in excess of available insurance, or another type of claim which is uninsured or that results in significant adverse publicity against us, could harm our business, results of operations, and financial

condition. Any claim, regardless of its merit or eventual outcome, could result in significant legal defense costs. These costs would have the effect of increasing our expenses and diverting management's attention away from the operation of our business, and could harm our business. Cost associated with these potential actions could negatively affect our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

We face risks related to our international sales, including the need to obtain necessary foreign regulatory clearance or approvals.

Sales of our products outside the U.S. will subject us to foreign regulatory requirements that vary widely from country to country. The time required to obtain clearances or approvals required by other countries may be longer than that required for FDA clearance or approval, and requirements for such approvals may differ from FDA requirements. We may be unable to obtain regulatory approvals and may also incur significant costs in attempting to obtain foreign regulatory approvals or maintain those we already have, including in Canada, Australia, the U.K., Ireland, France, and the E.U. If we experience delays in receipt of approvals to market our products in new jurisdictions, or if we fail to receive these approvals, we may be unable to market our products in international markets in a timely manner, if at all, which could materially impact our international expansion and adversely affect our business as a whole. In addition, we anticipate that regulations in certain foreign countries may challenge our teledentistry model. Some international regulations may also limit the availability of SmilePay to members in certain jurisdictions without our first obtaining a license or engaging a third party to provide such financing, or limit the financing options we can offer our members. If any of these risks were to materialize, they could limit our expected international growth and profitability.

Risks Related to our Common Stock

Our Class A common stock could be delisted from NASDAQ, which would seriously harm the liquidity of our Class A common stock.

NASDAQ requires listing issuers to comply with certain standards in order to remain listed on its exchange. If, for any reason, NASDAQ should delist our Class A common stock from trading on its exchange and we are unable to obtain listing on another reputable national securities exchange, a reduction in some or all of the following may occur, each of which could materially adversely affect our stockholders:

- the liquidity and marketability of our Class A common stock;
- the market price of our Class A common stock;
- our ability to obtain financing for the continuation of our operations;
- the number of institutional and general investors that will consider investing in our Class A common stock;
- the number of market makers in our Class A common stock;
- the availability of information concerning the trading prices and volume of our Class A common stock; and
- the number of broker-dealers willing to execute trades in shares of our Class A common stock.

On November 18, 2022, we received a letter from the Listing Qualifications Staff of NASDAQ indicating that, based upon the closing bid price of our Class A common stock, for the prior 30 consecutive business days, the common stock was below the $1.00 minimum bid price requirement for continued listing on NASDAQ pursuant to the NASDAQ listing rules (the "Minimum Bid Requirement"). As a result, we were notified by NASDAQ that we are not in compliance with the Minimum Bid Requirement. This notice had no immediate effect on the continued listing status of our common stock on NASDAQ, and our listing remains fully effective. In accordance with the NASDAQ listing rules, we have been provided an initial compliance period of 180 calendar days, or until May 17, 2023, to regain compliance with the Minimum Bid Requirement. If we do not regain compliance within the allotted compliance periods, including any extensions that may be

granted by NASDAQ, NASDAQ will provide notice that our Class A common stock will be subject to delisting. We would then be entitled to appeal NASDAQ's determination, but there can be no assurance that NASDAQ would grant our request for continued listing. We intend to monitor the closing bid price of our Class A common stock and consider available options to regain compliance with the Minimum Bid Requirement and continue listing on NASDAQ.

In addition, if we cease to be eligible to trade on NASDAQ, we may have to pursue trading on a less recognized or accepted market, such as the over the counter markets, our stock may be traded as a "penny stock" which would make transactions in our stock more difficult and cumbersome, and we may be unable to access capital on favorable terms or at all, as companies trading on alternative markets may be viewed as less attractive investments with higher associated risks, such that existing or prospective institutional investors may be less interested in, or prohibited from, investing in our common stock. This may also cause the market price of our Class A common stock to further decline.

We are a "controlled company" within the meaning of the corporate governance standards of NASDAQ. As a result, we qualify for, and rely on, exemptions from certain corporate governance standards.

Pursuant to the Voting Agreement, David Katzman, our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, controls a majority of the voting power of shares eligible to vote in the election of our directors. Because more than 50% of the voting power in the election of our directors is held by an individual, group, or another company, we are a "controlled company" within the meaning of the corporate governance standards of NASDAQ. As a controlled company, we have elected not to comply with certain corporate governance requirements, including the requirements that, within one year of the date of the listing of our Class A common stock:

- a majority of our board of directors consists of "independent directors," as defined under the rules of such exchange;
- our board of directors has a compensation committee that is composed entirely of independent directors with a written charter addressing the committee's purpose and responsibilities; and
- our board of directors has a nominating and corporate governance committee that is composed entirely of independent directors with a written charter addressing the committee's purpose and responsibilities.

The majority of our directors are not independent and, other than the audit committee, our board committees are not composed entirely of independent directors. Accordingly, our stockholders do not have the same protections afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to all of the corporate governance requirements of NASDAQ.

We incur increased costs and are subject to additional regulations and requirements as a result of being a public company, which could lower our profits or make it more difficult to run our business.

As a public company, we incur significant legal, accounting, and other expenses that we did not incur as a private company, including costs associated with public company reporting requirements. We also incur costs associated with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, and related rules implemented by the SEC and NASDAQ. The expenses generally for reporting and corporate governance purposes increase our legal and financial compliance costs and make some activities more time-consuming and costly. Furthermore, if we are unable to satisfy our obligations as a public company, we could be subject to delisting of our Class A common stock, fines, sanctions, other regulatory action, and potentially civil litigation.

If we are unable to maintain effective internal control over financial reporting, investors may lose confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our financial reports and the market price of our Class A common stock may decline.

We are required to maintain internal control over financial reporting, report any material weaknesses in such internal controls, and furnish a report by management on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting, pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. The process of designing, implementing, and testing the internal control over financial reporting required to comply with this obligation is time consuming, costly, and complicated. If we identify material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting, if we are unable to comply with the requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act in a timely manner, or if we are unable to assert that our internal control over financial reporting is

effective, investors may lose confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our financial reports and the market price of our Class A common stock could decline, and we could also become subject to investigations by the stock exchange on which our Class A common stock is listed, the SEC, or other regulatory authorities, which could require additional financial and management resources.

The trading price of shares of our Class A common stock has declined significantly since our initial public offering and may continue to be volatile.

The market price of our Class A common stock has declined significantly since our initial public offering and may continue to be highly volatile and subject to wide fluctuations. Securities markets worldwide experience significant price and volume fluctuations. This market volatility, as well as general economic, market, or political conditions, could reduce the market price of shares of our Class A common stock regardless of our operating performance. The market price of shares of our Class A common stock may be affected by a number of potential factors, including variations in our quarterly operating results or dividends, if any, to stockholders, adverse publicity surrounding our business, additions or departures of key management personnel, failure to meet analysts' earnings estimates, publication of research reports about us and our industry, litigation and government investigations, changes or proposed changes in laws or regulations or differing interpretations or enforcement thereof affecting our business, adverse market reaction to any indebtedness we may incur or securities we may issue in the future, changes in market valuations of similar companies or speculation in the press or investment community, announcements by our competitors of significant contracts, acquisitions, dispositions, strategic partnerships, joint ventures, or capital commitments, adverse publicity about the industries we participate in, or individual scandals.

In the past few years, stock markets have experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations. In the past, following periods of volatility in the overall market and the market price of a company's securities, securities class action litigation has often been instituted against these companies. Such litigation could result in substantial costs and diversion of our management's attention and resources. See *"We are the subject of purported class action lawsuits, and additional litigation may be brought against us in the future."*

We have no current plans to pay cash dividends on our Class A common stock; as a result, our stockholders may not receive any return on investment unless our stockholders sell their Class A common stock for a price greater than that which they paid for it.

We have no current plans to pay dividends on our Class A common stock. Any future determination to pay dividends will be made at the discretion of our board of directors, subject to applicable laws, and will depend on a number of factors, including our financial condition, results of operations, capital requirements, contractual, legal, tax and regulatory restrictions, general business conditions, and other factors that our board of directors may deem relevant. In addition, our ability to pay cash dividends may be restricted by the terms of any of our future debt financing arrangements, which may contain terms restricting or limiting the amount of dividends that may be declared or paid on our common stock. As a result, our stockholders may not receive any return on an investment in our Class A common stock unless they sell their Class A common stock for a price greater than that which they paid for it.

If our operating and financial performance in any given period does not meet the guidance that we provide to the public, the market price of our Class A common stock may decline.

We may, but are not obligated to, provide public guidance on our expected operating and financial results for future periods. Any such guidance will be comprised of forward-looking statements subject to the risks and uncertainties described in our public filings and public statements. Our actual results may not always be in line with or exceed any guidance we have provided, especially in times of economic uncertainty. If, in the future, our operating or financial results for a particular period do not meet any guidance we provide or the expectations of investment analysts, or if we reduce our guidance for future periods, the market price of our Class A common stock may decline. Even if we do issue public guidance, there can be no assurance that we will continue to do so in the future.

If securities or industry analysts cease to publish research or reports about our business, or publish negative reports, the market price of our Class A common stock could decline.

The trading market for our Class A common stock will be influenced by the research and reports that industry or securities analysts publish about us or our business. If one or more of these analysts ceases coverage of us or fails to publish reports on us regularly, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which in turn could cause the market price or trading volume of our Class A common stock to decline. Moreover, if one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrades our Class A common stock, or if our reporting results do not meet their expectations, the market price of our Class A common stock could decline. Some securities analysts have downgraded our Class A common stock since our initial public offering.

The dual-class structure of our common stock may adversely affect the trading market for our Class A Shares.

S&P Dow Jones' criteria for inclusion of shares of public companies on certain indices, including the S&P 500, excludes companies with multiple classes of shares from being added to such indices. In addition, several shareholder advisory firms have announced their opposition to the use of multiple class structures. As a result, the dual class structure of our common stock may prevent the inclusion of our Class A common stock in such indices and may cause shareholder advisory firms to publish negative commentary about our corporate governance practices or otherwise seek to cause us to change our capital structure. Any exclusion from such indices could result in a less active trading market for our Class A common stock. Any actions or publications by shareholder advisory firms critical of our corporate governance practices or capital structure could also adversely affect the value of our Class A common stock.

If we or the Pre-IPO investors sell substantial amounts of shares of our Class A common stock, the market price of our Class A common stock could decline.

The sale of a substantial number of shares of our Class A common stock in the public market, or the perception that such sales could occur could adversely affect the prevailing market price of shares of our Class A common stock. These sales, or the possibility that these sales may occur, also might make it more difficult for us to sell equity securities in the future at a time and at a price we deem appropriate. In addition, subject to certain limitations and exceptions, pursuant to certain provisions of the SDC Financial LLC Agreement, the holders of LLC Units following the consummation of our initial public offering and the reorganization transactions in connection with our initial public offering ("Continuing LLC Member") may exchange LLC Units (with automatic cancellation of an equal number of shares of Class B common stock) for shares of our Class A common stock on a one-for-one basis, subject to customary adjustments for certain subdivisions (stock splits), combinations, or purchases of Class A common stock. All of the LLC Units and shares of Class B common stock are exchangeable for shares of our Class A common stock.

Each of our directors and officers, and substantially all of our Pre-IPO investors, entered into lock-up agreements with the underwriters of our initial public offering that restricted their ability to sell or transfer their shares of Class A common stock. This agreement expired on March 9, 2020.

In addition, on September 16, 2019, we filed a registration statement on Form S-8 under the Securities Act to register 44,259,239 shares of our Class A common stock or securities convertible into or exchangeable for shares of our Class A common stock that may be issued from time to time pursuant to our Omnibus Plan and SPP. Accordingly, shares of Class A common stock registered under such registration statement if, when, and to the extent issued under these plans, will be available for sale in the open market.

We are party to a Registration Rights Agreement with Pre-IPO investors, whereby, following the initial public offering and the expiration of the related 180-day lock-up period, we may be required to register under the Securities Act the sale of shares of our Class A common stock held by Pre-IPO investors, including shares that may be issued to Continuing LLC Members upon exchange of their LLC Units. Shares of Class A common stock registered pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement will also be available for sale in the open market upon such registration unless restrictions apply.

As restrictions on resale end, the market price of our Class A common stock could drop significantly if the holders of these restricted shares sell them or are perceived by the market as intending to sell them. These factors could also make it more difficult for us to raise additional funds through future offerings of our common stock or other securities.

Risks Related to our Organization and Structure

Pursuant to the Voting Agreement, David Katzman, our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, controls a majority of the voting power of shares of our common stock eligible to vote in the election of our directors and on other matters submitted to a vote of our stockholders, and his interests may conflict with ours or our stockholders' in the future.

Holders of our Class A common stock and our Class B common stock vote together as a single class on all matters (including the election of directors) submitted to a vote of stockholders, with each share of Class A common stock entitling the holder to one vote and each share of Class B common stock entitling the holder to ten votes. Certain trusts affiliated with David Katzman, our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, Steven Katzman, our Chief Operating Officer, Jordan Katzman and Alexander Fenkell, our co-founders, and certain of their affiliated trusts and entities (collectively, the "Voting Group") are party to a Voting Agreement (the "Voting Agreement"), pursuant to which the Voting Group has given David Katzman, sole voting, but not dispositive, power over the shares of our Class B common stock beneficially owned by the Voting Group. Accordingly, pursuant to the Voting Agreement, David Katzman controls a majority of the voting power of shares of our common stock eligible to vote in the election of our directors and on other matters submitted to a vote of our stockholders. So long as 9.4% of shares of Class B common stock remain outstanding, the holders of our Class B common stock will be able to control the outcome of matters submitted to a stockholder vote. Even when the Voting Group ceases to own shares of our common stock representing a majority of the total voting power, for so long as the Voting Group continues to own a significant percentage of our common stock, David Katzman, through his voting power, will still be able to significantly influence the composition of our board of directors and the approval of actions requiring stockholder approval. Accordingly, for such period of time, David Katzman will have significant influence with respect to our management, business plans, and policies, including the appointment and removal of our officers. In particular, until the earlier of (i) the ten-year anniversary of the consummation of our initial public offering or (ii) the date on which the shares of Class B common stock held by the Voting Group and their permitted transferees represent less than 15% of the Class B common stock held by the Voting Group and their permitted transferees as of immediately following the consummation of our initial public offering, David Katzman will be able to cause or prevent a change of control of us or a change in the composition of our board of directors and could preclude any unsolicited acquisition of us. The concentration of voting power could deprive stockholders of an opportunity to receive a premium for their shares of Class A common stock as part of a sale of us and ultimately might affect the market price of our Class A common stock.

David Katzman and Camelot Venture Group ("Camelot"), with which he and certain other members of the Voting Group are affiliated, engage in a broad spectrum of activities. While the SDC Financial LLC Agreement restricts the Continuing LLC Members from engaging in certain competing business activities, David Katzman and Camelot may engage in activities where their interests conflict with our interests or those of our stockholders.

We are a holding company. Our sole material asset is our equity interest in SDC Financial, and as such, we depend on our subsidiaries for cash to fund all of our expenses, including taxes and payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement.

We are a holding company and have no material assets other than our ownership of LLC Units. Our ability to pay cash dividends will depend on the payment of distributions by our current and future subsidiaries, including SDC Financial, SDC LLC and SDC Holding, and such distributions may be restricted as a result of regulatory restrictions, state law regarding distributions by a limited liability company to its members, or contractual agreements, including any future agreements governing their indebtedness.

SDC Financial is treated as a flow-through entity for U.S. federal income tax purposes and, as such, generally is not subject to U.S. federal income tax. Instead, taxable income will be allocated to holders of LLC Units, including us. Accordingly, we will incur income taxes on our allocable share of any net taxable income of SDC Financial and will also incur expenses related to our operations. Subject to having available cash and subject to limitations imposed by applicable

law and contractual restrictions (including pursuant to our debt instruments), the SDC Financial LLC Agreement requires SDC Financial to make certain distributions to us and the Continuing LLC Members, calculated using an assumed tax rate, to facilitate the payment of taxes with respect to the income of SDC Financial that is allocated to us and them. We also incur expenses related to our operations and will cause SDC Financial to make distributions or, in the case of certain expenses, payments in an amount sufficient to allow us to pay our taxes and operating expenses and to fund our payment of amounts due under the Tax Receivable Agreement. Because tax distributions are based on an assumed tax rate, SDC Financial may be required to make tax distributions that, in the aggregate, exceed the amount of taxes that SDC Financial would have paid if it were itself taxed on its net income. SDC Financial's ability to make such distributions may be subject to various limitations and restrictions. If we do not have sufficient funds to pay tax or other liabilities or to fund our operations (as a result of SDC Financial's inability to make distributions due to various limitations and restrictions or as a result of the acceleration of our obligations under the Tax Receivable Agreement), we may have to borrow funds, and our liquidity and financial condition could be materially and adversely affected. To the extent that we are unable to make payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement for any reason, such payments will be deferred and will accrue interest.

SDC Financial may make distributions of cash to us substantially in excess of the amounts we use to make distributions to our stockholders and pay our expenses (including our taxes and payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement). To the extent we do not distribute such excess cash as dividends on our Class A common stock, the Continuing LLC Members would benefit from any value attributable to such cash as a result of their ownership of Class A common stock upon an exchange or redemption of their LLC Units.

We will receive a portion of any distributions made by SDC Financial. Any cash received from such distributions will first be used by us to satisfy any tax liability and then to make any payments required under the Tax Receivable Agreement. Subject to having available cash and subject to limitations imposed by applicable law and contractual restrictions (including pursuant to our debt instruments), the SDC Financial LLC Agreement requires SDC Financial to make certain distributions to us and the Continuing LLC Members, pro rata, to facilitate the payment of taxes with respect to the income of SDC Financial that is allocated to us and them. To the extent that the tax distributions we receive exceed the amounts we actually require to pay taxes, Tax Receivable Agreement payments, and other expenses, we will not be required to distribute such excess cash. Our board of directors may, in its sole discretion, choose to use such excess cash for any purpose, including (i) to make distributions to the holders of our Class A common stock, (ii) to acquire additional newly issued LLC Units, and/or (iii) to repurchase outstanding shares of our Class A common stock. Unless and until our board of directors chooses, in its sole discretion, to declare a distribution, we will have no obligation to distribute such cash (or other available cash other than any declared dividend) to our stockholders.

No adjustments to the redemption or exchange ratio of LLC Units for shares of our Class A common stock will be made as a result of either (i) any cash distribution by us or (ii) any cash that we retain and do not distribute to our stockholders. To the extent we do not distribute such cash as dividends on our Class A common stock and instead, for example, hold such cash balances, buy additional LLC Units or lend them to SDC Financial, this may result in shares of our Class A common stock increasing in value relative to the LLC Units. The holders of LLC Units may benefit from any value attributable to such cash balances if they acquire shares of Class A common stock in exchange for their LLC Units or if we acquire additional LLC Units (whether from SDC Financial or from holders of LLC Units) at a price based on the market price of our Class A common stock at the time.

Pursuant to the Tax Receivable Agreement, we will be required to pay the Continuing LLC Members for certain tax benefits we may claim as a result of the tax basis step-up we received in connection with our initial public offering, as well as subsequent exchanges of LLC Units for shares of Class A common stock or cash. In certain circumstances, payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement may be accelerated and/or significantly exceed the actual tax benefits we realize.

Our purchase of LLC Units from SDC Financial, coupled with SDC Financial's purchase and cancellation of LLC Units from the Pre-IPO investors in connection with the IPO and any future exchanges of LLC Units for our Class A common stock or cash, resulted and are expected in the future to result in increases in our allocable tax basis in the assets of SDC Financial that otherwise would not have been available to us. These increases in tax basis are expected to reduce the amount of cash tax that we would otherwise have to pay in the future due to increases in depreciation and amortization deductions (for tax

purposes). These increases in tax basis may also decrease gain (or increase loss) on future dispositions of certain assets of SDC Financial to the extent the increased tax basis is allocated to those assets. The Internal Revenue Service ("IRS") may challenge all or part of these tax basis increases, and a court could sustain such a challenge.

We and SDC Financial entered into the Tax Receivable Agreement, pursuant to which SmileDirectClub, Inc. ("SDC Inc.") agreed to pay the Continuing LLC Members 85% of the cash savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state, and local income tax or franchise tax that SDC Inc. actually realizes as a result of (a) the increases in tax basis attributable to exchanges by Continuing LLC Members and (b) tax benefits related to imputed interest deemed to be paid by SDC Inc. as a result of the Tax Receivable Agreement. While the actual increase in tax basis, as well as the actual amount and timing of any payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement, will vary depending upon a number of factors, including the timing of exchanges, the price of shares of our Class A common stock at the time of the exchange, the extent to which such exchanges are taxable, future tax rates, and the amount and timing of our income, we expect that, as a result of the size of the increases in the tax basis of the tangible and intangible assets of SDC Financial attributable to our interests in SDC Financial, during the expected term of the Tax Receivable Agreement, the payments that we may make to the Continuing LLC Members could be substantial.

The payment obligation under the Tax Receivable Agreement is our obligation and not an obligation of SDC Financial. In addition, the Continuing LLC Members will not reimburse us for any payments previously made under the Tax Receivable Agreement if such basis increases or other benefits are subsequently disallowed, although excess payments made to any Continuing LLC Member may be netted against payments otherwise to be made, if any, to the relevant Continuing LLC Member after our determination of such excess. However, a challenge to any tax benefits initially claimed by us may not arise for a number of years following the initial time of such payment or, even if challenged early, such excess cash payment may be greater than the amount of future cash payments that we might otherwise be required to make under the terms of the Tax Receivable Agreement and, as a result, there might not be future cash payments from which to net against. The applicable U.S. federal income tax rules are complex and factual in nature, and there can be no assurance that the IRS or a court will not disagree with our tax reporting positions. As a result, in certain circumstances we may make payments to the Continuing LLC Members under the Tax Receivable Agreement in excess of our actual cash tax savings. Our ability to achieve benefits from any tax basis increase, and the payments to be made under the Tax Receivable Agreement, will depend upon a number of factors, as discussed above, including the timing and amount of our future income.

In addition, the Tax Receivable Agreement provides that, upon a merger, asset sale or other form of business combination or certain other changes of control, a material breach of our obligations under the Tax Receivable Agreement or if, at any time, we elect an early termination of the Tax Receivable Agreement, our (or our successor's) obligations with respect to exchanged or acquired LLC Units (whether exchanged or acquired before or after such change of control or early termination) would be based on certain assumptions, including that we would have sufficient taxable income to fully utilize the deductions arising from the increased tax deductions and tax basis and other benefits related to entering into the Tax Receivable Agreement, and, in the case of certain early termination elections, that any LLC Units that have not been exchanged will be deemed exchanged for the market value of the Class A common stock at the time of termination. Consequently, it is possible, in these circumstances, that the actual cash tax savings realized by us may be significantly less than the corresponding Tax Receivable Agreement payments.

Anti-takeover provisions in our organizational documents and Delaware law might discourage or delay attempts to acquire us that stockholders might consider favorable.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws contain provisions that may make the merger or acquisition of us more difficult without the approval of our board of directors. Among other things, these provisions:

- allow us to authorize the issuance of undesignated preferred stock in connection with a stockholder rights plan or otherwise, the terms of which may be established and the shares of which may be issued without stockholder approval, and which may include super voting, special approval, dividend, or other rights or preferences superior to the rights of the holders of common stock;

- preclude stockholder action by written consent at any time when the Voting Group controls, in the aggregate, less than 30% of the voting power of our stock entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, unless such action is unanimously recommended by the board;
- provide that our bylaws may be amended or repealed only by a majority vote of our board of directors or by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least 66 2/3% of the votes which all our stockholders would be entitled to cast in any annual election of directors; and

- establish advance notice requirements for nominations for elections to our board or for proposing matters that can be acted upon by stockholders at stockholder meetings.

Further, as a Delaware corporation, we are also subject to provisions of Delaware law, which may impair a takeover attempt that our stockholders may find beneficial. These anti-takeover provisions and other provisions under Delaware law could discourage, delay, or prevent a transaction involving a change in control of us, including actions that our stockholders may deem advantageous, or could negatively affect the market price of our Class A common stock. These provisions could also discourage proxy contests and make it more difficult for stockholders to elect directors of their choosing and to cause us to take other corporate actions that stockholders desire.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation designates the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware as the sole and exclusive forum for certain types of actions and proceedings that may be initiated by our stockholders, which could limit our stockholders' ability to obtain a favorable judicial forum for certain disputes with us or our directors, officers, or employees.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that, unless we consent to the selection of an alternative forum, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, be the sole and exclusive forum for any (i) derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf, (ii) action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any of our directors or officers to us or our stockholders, creditors, or other constituents, (iii) action asserting a claim against us or any our directors or officers arising pursuant to any provision of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, or our amended and restated bylaws, or (iv) action asserting a claim against us or any of our directors or officers governed by the internal affairs doctrine, provided, however, that, in the event that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware lacks subject matter jurisdiction over any such action or proceeding, the sole and exclusive forum for such action or proceeding shall, with limited exceptions, be another state or federal court located within the State of Delaware. Any person or entity purchasing or otherwise acquiring any interest in our shares of capital stock shall be deemed to have notice of and consented to the forum provisions in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation described above. This choice of forum provision may limit a stockholder's ability to bring claim in a judicial forum that it finds favorable for disputes with us or our directors, officers, or employees, which may discourage such lawsuits against us and our directors, officers, and employees. Alternatively, if a court were to find these provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation inapplicable to, or unenforceable in respect of, one or more of the specified types of actions or proceedings, we may incur additional costs associated with resolving such matters in other jurisdictions, which could adversely affect our business and financial condition.

Provisions in our organizational documents regarding exculpation and indemnification of our directors and officers may result in substantial expenditures by us and may discourage lawsuits against our directors and officers.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws, to the maximum extent permissible under Delaware law, eliminate the personal liability of our directors and officers to us and our stockholders for damages for breach of fiduciary duty. These provisions may discourage us, or our stockholders through derivative litigation, from bringing a lawsuit against any of our current or former directors or officers for any breaches of their fiduciary duties, even if such legal actions, if successful, might benefit us or our stockholders. In addition, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws will provide that we will, to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law, indemnify our directors and officers for costs or damages incurred by them in connection with any threatened, pending, or completed action, suit, or proceeding brought against by reason of their positions as directors and officers. We are also party

to indemnification agreements with each of our directors and executive officers and maintain directors' and officers' insurance. These indemnification obligations could result in our incurring substantial expenditures to cover the cost of settlement or damage awards against our directors or officers

Risks Related to the Notes

We have indebtedness in the form of convertible senior notes, which could adversely affect our financial health and our ability to respond to changes in our business.

In February 2021, we issued approximately $650.0 million principal amount of 0.00% convertible senior notes due in 2026 (the "Notes") in a private placement offering. We also issued an additional $97.5 million aggregate principal amount of the Notes to the initial purchasers under an option granted to the initial purchasers. Our ability to repay our indebtedness, including the Notes, is significantly dependent on the generation of cash flow by our subsidiaries, as we are a holding company, and their ability to make such cash available to us, by dividend, debt repayment or otherwise.

Our indebtedness could have significant negative consequences for our security holders and our business, results of operations and financial condition by, among other things:

- increasing our vulnerability to adverse economic and industry conditions;
- limiting our ability to obtain additional financing;
- requiring the dedication of a substantial portion of our cash flow from operations to service our indebtedness, which will reduce the amount of cash available for other purposes;
- limiting our flexibility to plan for, or react to, changes in our business;
- diluting the interests of our existing stockholders as a result of issuing shares of our Class A common stock upon conversion of the notes; and
- placing us at a possible competitive disadvantage with competitors that are less leveraged than us or have better access to capital.

Our business may not generate sufficient funds, and we may otherwise be unable to maintain sufficient cash reserves, to pay amounts due under our indebtedness, including the notes, and our cash needs may increase in the future.

We may be unable to raise the funds necessary to repurchase the notes for cash following a fundamental change or to pay any cash amounts due upon conversion, and our other indebtedness limits our ability to repurchase the notes or pay cash upon their conversion.

Noteholders may require us to repurchase their notes following a fundamental change at a cash repurchase price generally equal to the principal amount of the notes to be repurchased, plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any. In addition, upon conversion, we will satisfy part or all of our conversion obligation in cash unless we elect to settle conversions solely in shares of our Class A common stock. We may not have enough available cash or be able to obtain financing at the time we are required to repurchase the notes or pay the cash amounts due upon conversion. In addition, applicable law, regulatory authorities and the agreements governing our other indebtedness may restrict our ability to repurchase the notes or pay the cash amounts due upon conversion. Our failure to repurchase notes or to pay the cash amounts due upon conversion when required will constitute a default under the indenture. A default under the indenture or the fundamental change itself could also lead to a default under agreements governing our other indebtedness, which may result in that other indebtedness becoming immediately payable in full. We may not have sufficient funds to satisfy all amounts due under the other indebtedness and the notes.

The accounting method for the notes could adversely affect our reported financial condition and results.

The accounting method for reflecting the notes on our balance sheet, accruing interest expense for the notes and reflecting the underlying shares of our Class A common stock in our reported diluted earnings per share may adversely affect our reported earnings and financial condition.

We are subject to counterparty risk with respect to the capped call transactions, and the capped call may not operate as planned.

In connection with the pricing of the notes, we entered into privately negotiated capped call transactions with the option counterparties. The capped call transactions are expected generally to reduce the potential dilution to our Class A common stock upon any conversion of the notes and/or offset any potential cash payments we are required to make in excess of the principal amount of converted notes, as the case may be, with such reduction and/or offset subject to a cap.

The option counterparties are financial institutions, and we will be subject to the risk that they might default under the capped call transactions. Our exposure to the credit risk of the option counterparties will not be secured by any collateral. Global economic conditions have from time to time resulted in the actual or perceived failure or financial difficulties of many financial institutions, including the bankruptcy filing by Lehman Brothers Holdings Inc. and its various affiliates. If an option counterparty becomes subject to insolvency proceedings, we will become an unsecured creditor in those proceedings with a claim equal to our exposure at that time under our transactions with that option counterparty. Our exposure will depend on many factors, but, generally, the increase in our exposure will be correlated with increases in the market price or the volatility of our Class A common stock. In addition, upon a default by an option counterparty, we may suffer more dilution than we currently anticipate with respect to our Class A common stock. We can provide no assurances as to the financial stability or viability of any option counterparty.

Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments

None.

Item 2. Properties

Our corporate headquarters are located in Nashville, Tennessee. We also lease our manufacturing facilities in Antioch, Tennessee and Columbia, Tennessee. We have 125 SmileShops across the U.S., Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, Ireland, U.K., and France all of which are either leased or licensed from our retail partners. Lastly, we lease our facility in San Jose, Costa Rica. Management believes the terms of the leases are consistent with market standards and were arrived at through arm's-length negotiation.

Item 3. Legal Proceedings

In the ordinary course of conducting its business, the Company is involved, from time to time, in various contractual, product liability, intellectual property, and other claims and disputes incidental to its business. Litigation is subject to many uncertainties, the outcome of individual litigated matters is not predictable with assurance, and it is reasonably possible that some of these matters may be decided unfavorably to the Company and could have a material impact on the financial statements. In addition, the Company periodically receives communications from state and federal regulatory and similar agencies inquiring about the nature of its business activities, licensing of professionals providing services, and similar matters. Such matters are routinely concluded with no financial or operational impact on the Company.

From September to December 2019, a number of purported stockholder class action complaints were filed in the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee and in state courts in Tennessee, Michigan, and New York against the Company, members of the Company's board of directors, certain of its current or former officers, and the underwriters of its IPO. The following complaints have been filed to date: Mancour v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-1169-IV (TN Chancery Court filed 9/27/19), Vang v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19c2316 (TN Circuit Court filed 9/30/19), Fernandez v. SmileDirectClub, Inc.,

19c2371 (TN Circuit Court filed 10/4/19), Wei Wei v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-1254-III (TN Chancery Court filed 10/18/19), Andre v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-cv-12883 (E.D. Mich. filed 10/2/19), Ginsberg v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-cv-09794 (S.D.N.Y. filed 10/23/19), Franchi v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-cv-962 (M.D. Tenn. filed 10/29/19), Nurlybayev v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-177527-CB (Oakland County, MI Circuit Court filed 10/30/19), Sasso v. Katzman, et al., No. 657557/2019 (NY Supreme Court filed 12/18/19), Nurlybayev v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., No. 652603/2020 (Supreme Ct. N.Y. Cty. filed June 19, 2020). The complaints all allege, among other things, that the registration statement filed with the SEC on August 16, 2019, and accompanying amendments, and the Prospectus filed with the SEC on September 13, 2019, in connection with the Company's initial public offering were inaccurate and misleading, contained untrue statements of material facts, omitted to state other facts necessary to make the statements made not misleading, and omitted to state material facts required to be stated therein. The complaints seek unspecified money damages, other equitable relief, and attorneys' fees and costs. All the actions are in the preliminary stages. The Company denies any alleged wrongdoing and is vigorously defending against these actions.

In December 2019, the Fernandez, Vang, Mancour and Wei Wei actions were consolidated and re-captioned In re SmileDirectClub, Inc. Securities Litigation, 19-1169-IV (Davidson County, TN Chancery Court). Plaintiffs filed a consolidated amended complaint on December 20, 2019, and Defendants moved to stay or dismiss the action on February 10, 2020. On June 4, 2020, the court denied that motion. Defendants subsequently moved for permission to seek an interlocutory appeal of that decision. On June 22, 2020, the court granted that motion. On August 3, 2020, Defendants filed an application for interlocutory appeal with the court of appeals, which was denied. On September 21, 2020, Defendants filed an application for interlocutory appeal with the Tennessee Supreme Court, which was denied. On October 2, 2020, Plaintiffs moved for class certification, which Defendants opposed on January 25, 2021. On April 28, 2021, the court ruled in favor of the Plaintiffs class certification. The Company filed its notice of appeal on May 4, 2021. That appeal was fully briefed as of October 6, 2021. All trial court proceedings are stayed during the pendency of the appeal. On March 18, 2022, the Tennessee Court of Appeals dismissed the Plaintiff's Section 12(a)(2) claims but affirmed the grant of certification. On October 24, 2022, Plaintiffs in the Franchi action described below moved to intervene in this action, and their motion was denied on December 6, 2022. The case is currently in discovery and the deadline for completion of fact discovery is June 13, 2023.

The Andre and Ginsberg actions were transferred to the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee, where they were consolidated with the Franchi action. Plaintiffs filed a consolidated amended complaint on February 21, 2020, and Defendants moved to dismiss the action on March 23, 2020. That motion remains pending. While that motion was pending, the parties stipulated to allow Plaintiffs to file a further amended complaint, which Plaintiffs filed on March 31, 2021. Defendants' motion to dismiss the new complaint was due on or before May 14, 2021. That motion was fully briefed as of July 19, 2021. On September 30, 2022, the Court denied in part and granted in part Defendants' motion to dismiss. Defendants filed an answer to the second amended complaint on November 14, 2022. The court held an initial case management conference on December 2, 2022. The case is currently in discovery and the deadline for completion of fact discovery is July 10, 2023.

In the Nurlybayev action, on January 10, 2020, the Defendants moved to dismiss or stay the entire action in favor of the related actions pending in Tennessee, which motion was granted and the case was dismissed on February 26, 2020. On June 19, 2020, Plaintiff Nurlybayev filed a substantially similar action in New York state court. On August 21, 2020, Defendants filed a motion to dismiss that action, which the Court granted on May 25, 2021. On January 31, 2022, Plaintiff filed a notice of appeal. On March 2, 2022, we filed our opposition. Plaintiff filed their reply brief on March 11, 2022. On April 5, 2022, the Court heard argument on the appeal and on May 25, 2022 the Court of Appeals granted our motion to dismiss. Plaintiff filed a notice of appeal, perfected his appeal on January 21, 2022, and the First Department affirmed dismissal of the action on May 5, 2022.

In the Sasso action, Plaintiff agreed to stay the action pending resolution of any motions to dismiss in any of the related actions. The Court so-ordered the parties' stipulation to that effect on January 22, 2020. On November 4, 2022, and again on February 2, 2023, the parties agreed to extend the stay and will provide an update to the Court on May 3, 2023.

In September 2019, a putative class action on behalf of a consumer and three orthodontists was brought against the Company in the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee, Ciccio, et al. v. SmileDirectClub, LLC, et al., Case

No. 3:19-cv-00845 (M.D. Tenn.). The Plaintiffs assert claims for breach of warranty, false advertising under the Lanham Act, common law fraud, and various state consumer protection statutes relating to the Company's advertising. Following a proactive voluntary dismissal by the majority of consumer plaintiffs, one consumer has since sought to rejoin the Middle District of Tennessee litigation or, in the alternative, to intervene, which the Court granted. That ruling has been appealed, and the Court stayed the consumer claims pending the appeal. On June 25, 2021, the appellate court reversed the district court and remanded with instructions to order the intervening plaintiff to mandatory binding arbitration. On September 20, 2022, the administrative AAA arbitrator confirmed that the consumer claims are subject to binding arbitration on an individual basis. All remaining consumer claims remain stayed. On October 13, 2021, the Court entered an Amended Scheduling Order, effectively staying merits discovery on the provider plaintiff claims, and setting deadlines of March 30, 2022, to complete class certification fact discovery and September 2, 2022, to complete briefing on motions regarding class certification. Class certification fact discovery was substantially completed on March 30, 2022 with the briefing on class certification currently stayed pending further discovery being sought by the Company. The Company denies any alleged wrongdoing and intends to defend against this action vigorously.

Some state dental boards have established new rules or interpreted existing rules in a manner that limits or restricts the Company's ability to conduct its business as currently conducted in other states or have engaged in conduct so as to otherwise interfere with the Company's ability to conduct its business. We have filed actions in federal court in Alabama, Georgia, and California against the state dental boards in those states, alleging violations by the dental boards of various laws, including the Sherman Act and the Commerce Clause. While a national orthodontic association has filed Amicus Briefs in support of the dental boards in both the Georgia and Alabama litigations and has filed a motion to do the same in California (which motion was denied), the FTC and DOJ filed joint Amicus Briefs in support of the Company in both the Alabama and Georgia matters. Both the Alabama and Georgia matters were then sent to the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals as a result of the dental boards in both states appealing the lower court's decisions. Oral argument before the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals occurred in the Georgia matter on May 20, 2020, and in the Alabama matter on July 8, 2020. The FTC and DOJ participated in oral arguments in support of the Company. The DOJ's antitrust chief presented in the Alabama matter. On August 11, 2020, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals affirmed the Georgia district court's denial of the board members' motion to dismiss. On December 8, 2020, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals voted to have a rehearing en banc. The FTC and DOJ filed an amicus and participated in oral argument that was held on February 23, 2021. On July 20, 2021, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals ruled in the Company's favor, finding that the Georgia Dental Board did not have an interlocutory right of appeal and therefore denied the Georgia Board's appeal. On July 29, 2021, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals also denied the Alabama Dental Board's appeal. Both cases were remanded to the respective District Courts to proceed accordingly into the discovery phase. The FTC also filed its own complaint against the Alabama Board for violating the Sherman Act, which complaint resulted in the Alabama Dental Board entering into a Consent Order in September 2021 and settling the litigation with the Company in December 2021.

On November 22, 2021, the Georgia Board filed a motion to dismiss in the Northern District of Georgia. On January 6, 2022, a hearing was held on the motion to dismiss. On July 15, 2022, the Court granted the Georgia Board's motion to dismiss without prejudice, allowing the Company to reassert its claims. Briefing on the Company's motion for leave to file its amended Complaint is now complete and oral arguments occurred on November 15, 2022. The California matter was amended, and an order of dismissal was entered on July 7, 2020. The Company filed notice of appeal on July 17, 2020, and the FTC and DOJ filed a joint Amicus Brief in support of the Company. Oral argument was held on July 26, 2021, with the FTC and DOJ arguing in support of the Company at oral argument as well. On March 17, 2022 the 9th Circuit issued its ruling reversing in part and affirming in part the District Court's decision. On April 21, 2022, the 9th Circuit issued an amended opinion adding a footnote indicating that no petitions for panel rehearing or rehearing en banc will be entertained. The parties are currently engaged in discovery, including preparing for mediation, engaging in discovery motions practice, producing and reviewing documents responsive to requests for production, preparing for depositions, and preparing for expert discovery. The parties will attend mediation on March 8, 2023. Fact discovery is scheduled to close on June 15, 2023.

On July 12, 2021, the Australian Competition & Consumer Commission ("ACCC") filed an Originating Application against SmileDirectClub, LLC and the Company's Australian affiliate SmileDirectClub Aus Pty Ltd. The Originating Application alleges certain misstatements by the Company in connection with the availability of consumers having the ability to have private health care coverage cover a portion of their costs when seeking treatment through the Company's telehealth platform. The Company and the ACCC have settled the matter with the terms of such settlement having been approved by the

Court. Pursuant to such approved settlement, the Company will pay a set fine and costs to the ACCC and has implemented a redress program for potentially impacted customers so as to fully resolve the matter.

On August 27, 2020, Align Technology, Inc. filed an arbitration demand against SDC alleging that SDC breached the Amended and Restated Supply Agreement between the parties and SDC, subsequently, filed counterclaims against Align alleging breaches by Align under the Agreement. The arbitration is proceeding in two phases to address the parties' claims. The hearing on the initial phase addressing Align's claims and one of SDC's counterclaims occurred in July 2022 and the second phase of the arbitration addressing the balance of SDC's counter claims hearing occurred in February 2023. Closing briefing schedules and oral argument have not yet been scheduled on the matter. On October 27, 2022, the arbitrator issued an interim award against SDC on certain of Align's claims, specifically stating that it was not final award, and that final award would be issued after the second phase of the arbitration and subsequent proceedings on attorneys' fees, interest, and costs. A final award against SDC in this arbitration could be material to our financial statements. The Company denies the allegations and intends to vigorously defend its position in this arbitration.

On December 5, 2022, the District of Columbia filed a complaint against the Company in the Superior Court of the District of Columbia alleging certain violations of the District of Columbia Consumer Protection Procedures Act. The Company has filed a Motion to Dismiss and briefing on the Motion to Dismiss has been concluded. The Court has not ruled whether oral argument will be heard on this pending motion and no ruling date has been set. The Company denies the allegations and intends to vigorously defend its position in this litigation.

On January 3, 2023, Align Technology, Inc. filed a complaint against the Company and certain of its officers and founders in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California purporting to set forth claims for alleged false advertising in violation of the Lanham Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1125(A); Racketeer & Corrupt Organizations Act, 18 U.S.C. § 1964(c); California Business & Prof. Code, §§ 17200, 17500, et seq.; and Arizona Anti-Racketeering Statute, A.R.S. § 13-2314. The Company denies the allegations and intends to vigorously defend its position in this litigation.

Tax Receivable Agreement

As described in Note 9 to our consolidated financial statements, the Company is a party to the Tax Receivable Agreement pursuant to which SDC Inc. is contractually committed to pay the Continuing LLC Members 85% of the amount of any tax benefits that SDC Inc. actually realizes, or in some cases is deemed to realize, as a result of certain transactions. The Company is not obligated to make any payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement until the tax benefits associated with the transactions that gave rise to the payments are realized. TRA Payments are contingent upon, among other things, (i) generation of future taxable income over the term of the Tax Receivable Agreement and (ii) future changes in tax laws. If the Company does not generate sufficient taxable income in the aggregate over the term of the Tax Receivable Agreement to utilize the tax benefits, then it will not be required to make the related TRA Payments. During the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, the Company recognized no liabilities relating to its obligations under the Tax Receivable Agreement, after concluding that it was not probable that the Company would have sufficient future taxable income over the term of the Tax Receivable Agreement to utilize the related tax benefits. There were no transactions subject to the Tax Receivable Agreement for which the Company recognized the related liability, as the Company concluded that it would not have sufficient future taxable income to utilize all of the related tax benefits.

Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures

Not applicable.

PART II

Item 5. Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

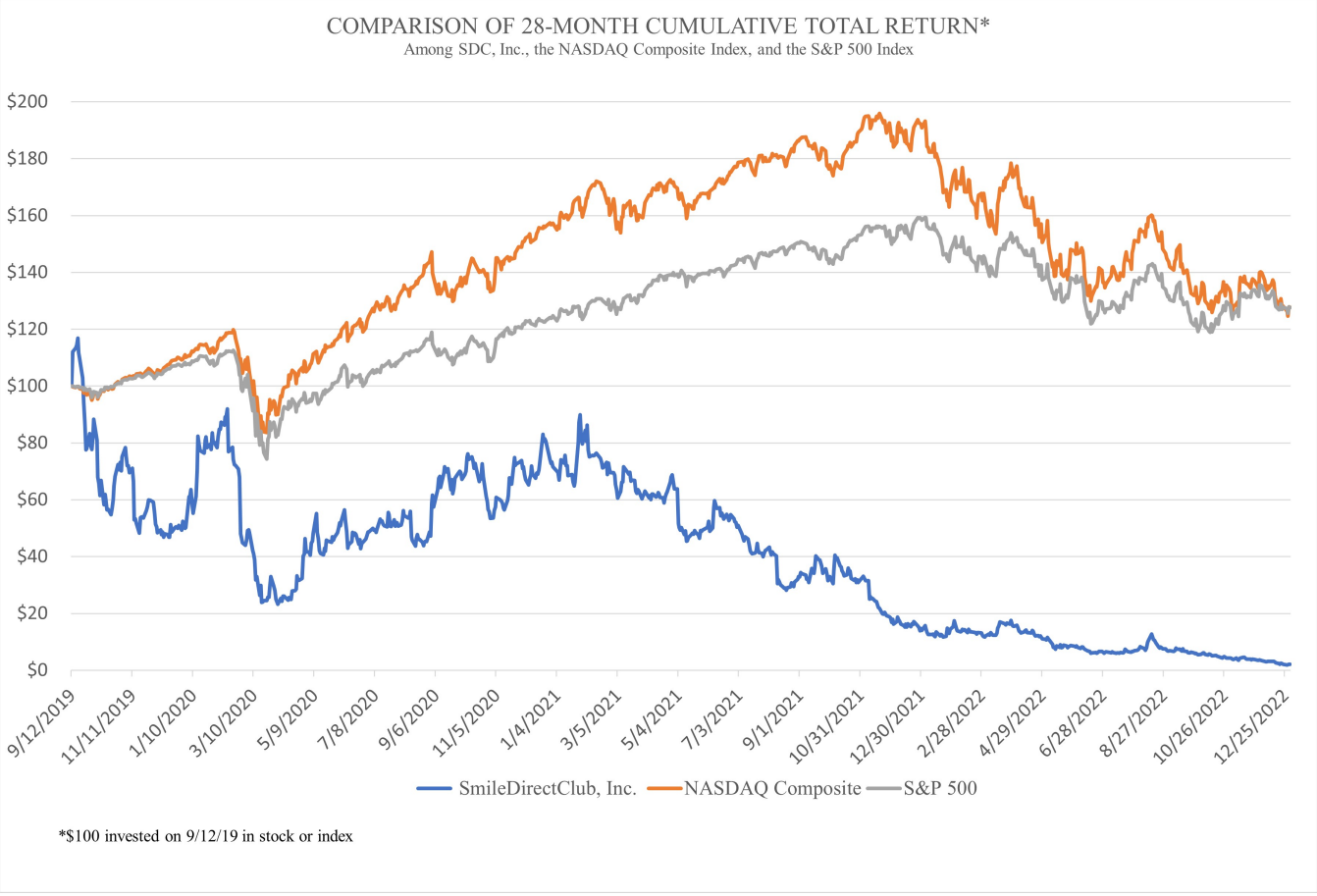
Market Information

Our Class A common stock trades on the NASDAQ Global Market under the symbol "SDC". As of February 24, 2023, there were approximately 13 holders of record of our Class A common stock. Because the majority of our shares are held by brokers and other institutions on behalf of stockholders, we are unable to estimate the total number of stockholders represented by these record holders.

Dividends

Holders of our Class A common stock are entitled to receive dividends when, as and if declared by the board of directors. We have not historically paid cash dividends and we have no current plans to pay dividends. The timing, declaration and payment of future dividends to holders of our Class A common stock will depend upon many factors, including our financial condition, results of operations, capital requirements, contractual, legal, tax and regulatory restrictions, general business conditions, and other factors that our board of directors may deem relevant.

Performance Graph



Item 6. Reserved

Reserved.

Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

The following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes thereto included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. In addition to historical consolidated financial information, the following discussion contains forward-looking statements that reflect our plans, estimates, and beliefs. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in any forward-looking statements. Factors that could cause or contribute to these differences include those factors discussed below, disclosed elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K, particularly under the heading "Risk Factors."

See "Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements."

We are an oral care company and the creator of the first MedTech platform for teeth straightening. Through our cutting-edge teledentistry technology and vertically integrated model, we are revolutionizing the oral care industry, from clear aligner therapy to our affordable, premium oral care product line. Our mission is to democratize access to a smile each and every person loves by making it affordable and convenient for everyone. We are headquartered in Nashville, Tennessee and operate in the U.S., Costa Rica, Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, United Kingdom, France, and Ireland.

Key Business Metrics

We review the following key business metrics to evaluate our business performance:

Unique aligner order shipments

For the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, we shipped 232,788 and 332,388 unique aligner orders, respectively. Each unique aligner order shipment represents a single contracted customer.

Average aligner gross sales price

We define average gross sales price (''ASP") as gross revenue, before implicit price concession and other variable considerations and exclusive of sales tax, from aligner orders shipped divided by the number of unique aligner orders shipped. We believe ASP is an indicator of the value we provide to our customers and our ability to maintain our pricing. Our ASP for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021 was $1,913 and $1,883, respectively. Our ASP is less than our standard $2,050 price as a result of discounts offered to select customers.

Key Factors Affecting Our Performance

We believe that our future performance will depend on many factors, including those described below and in the section titled "Risk Factors" included in Part I, Item 1A. in our Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Realignment of global workforce and strategic actions to increase profitability

On January 27, 2023, we announced a realignment of our operating programs and global workforce to further hone focus on our core business and technology enabled innovation portfolio, and introduce additional cost savings to the Company's operating plan in order to enable growth, and sustainable positive cash flow.

These actions to right-size the business are the natural next steps in the changes we introduced in 2022 to realign our operations in order to execute against our growth opportunities with efficiency and financial discipline. The opportunities we are in the process of launching include completing the launch of our artificial intelligence-enabled 3D mobile scanning technology, or SmileMaker Platform, which allows customers to scan their teeth using their mobile phone and receive a proposed aligner treatment plan in minutes, as well as our premium CarePlus offering, which allows customers to begin their treatment at a participating SmileDirectClub Partner Network office and receive an enhanced level of hybrid remote and in-person treatment. While we focus our resources on the successful deployment of these initiatives, we have paused expansion

into new international markets while the global economy recovers from pandemic and macroeconomic pressures that have contributed to challenging operating environments.

Launch of new initiatives during 2023

On November 18, 2022, we announced the launch of our AI-powered 3D mobile imaging product, the SmileMaker Platform, in Australia that is an industry first in leveraging AI to allow consumers to take a 3D image of their teeth using their mobile device. The platform will be introduced to the U.S. market in the first half of 2023 with the full rollout to all of the markets we operate in by the end of the year. This innovation not only introduces further-technology powered intelligence to our proprietary teledentistry and treatment planning platform, but may also increase customer conversion and decrease the path to purchase time by giving users an instant and initial view of their potential treatment plan and length of treatment.

During the first quarter of 2023, we introduced the SmileDirectClub CarePlus initiative ("SDC Care+") which features a hybrid in-person or remote treatment approach and elevated service offering designed to appeal to those who want the assurance of beginning treatment at a dentist office with the added convenience of a teledentistry option. SDC Care+ will be priced at $3,900 or less than $115 per month with FlexPay, and includes two years of complementary retainers, a dedicated concierge team including licensed dental assistants and hygienists and remote or in-person check-ins with a Partner Network dentist. The program is now available in four major U.S. markets (San Diego, Sacramento, Orlando and Denver) and will soon expand to further Partner Network offices across the U.S.

COVID-19 pandemic and macroeconomic environment

Although increasing rates of vaccinations across the globe and decreasing governmental restrictions have begun to lessen the impact of COVID-19, we continue to navigate the uncertain and unprecedented economic and operating conditions resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic and its protracted duration.

We bolstered our business continuity plans to address the evolving and on-going operational challenges associated with COVID-19. Specifically, we have a crisis management team that meets regularly with the heads of all functional areas to monitor the regulatory environment and health and safety guidelines and to manage the corresponding changes and impacts to our business. Our technology platforms continue to support a majority work from home environment. Our demand forecasting process is integrated with our suppliers to allow us to maintain target inventory levels. This collaborative relationship also allows us to monitor the impact of COVID-19 on our suppliers, review their related action plans and confirm they meet our standards as well as public health guidelines.

We believe that our teledentistry platform is well suited for the current operating environment. Our impression kit offers the ability to begin treatment or obtain any necessary touch-ups (mid-course corrections or refinements) remotely from home. During the COVID-19 pandemic, we experienced a customer shift towards impression kits, with approximately 60% of our clear aligner sales originating from impression kits during the second half of 2020 and first quarter of 2021. As governmental restrictions began to ease during the second quarter of 2021, we began to see a shift towards a more normalized mix of clear aligner sales originating from impressions kits versus scans in our SmileShops, Partner Network, and popup locations, with approximately 49% of our clear aligner sales originating from impression kits during the fourth quarter of fiscal 2022. Although we cannot know or control the duration and severity of COVID-19 and its impact on our business, we will continue to focus on efficient acquisition of new customers, including higher income customers, and controlled growth, each as more specifically discussed below.

We will also continue to evaluate our business due to the negative macroeconomic environment impacting our core demographic, including lower discretionary spending and a challenging economic environment impacted by increased inflation.

Cybersecurity Incident

On May 3, 2021, the Company announced that it experienced a systems outage that was caused by a cybersecurity incident on April 14, 2021 (the "Incident"). We promptly implemented a series of containment and remediation measures to address the Incident, including temporarily isolating and shutting down affected systems and related manufacturing

operations. We immediately mobilized our internal engineering security team and engaged leading forensic information technology firms to assist our investigation into the Incident. As a result of these efforts, we were able to successfully block the attack, no ransom was paid, and our systems and operations are back online and performing normally.

We had no data loss from, or other loss of assets as a result of, the Incident, including any exposure of customer or team member information. The Incident, however, caused delays and disruptions to parts of our business, including treatment planning, manufacturing operations, and product delivery. We maintain insurance coverage for certain expenses and potential liabilities that may be associated with the Incident. The Incident had a material impact on business operations and financial results in the second quarter of fiscal 2021, including a delay in fulfilling customer orders. As a result, we experienced a decrease to revenue and increase to certain costs associated with our response to the Incident. During 2022, we received $8.0 million in insurance proceeds as final settlement related to reimbursement of expenses and business interruption as result of the Incident, which is included in Other expense (income) on the consolidated statement of operations.

Efficient acquisition of new customers

- *Visits to our website:* During the fourth quarter of 2022, we averaged approximately 2-3 million unique visitors to our website each month, and we expect to continue to invest in sales and marketing to spread awareness and increase the number of individuals visiting our website.

- *Conversions from visits to aligner orders:* From our website, individuals can either sign up for a SmileShop appointment, order a doctor prescribed impression kit or book an appointment at an affiliated dentist or orthodontist office, which we refer to as our "Partner Network," to evaluate and ultimately purchase our clear aligner treatment. We expect to continue to invest heavily in our proprietary technology platform, operations, and other processes to improve customer experience from website visit through SmileShop and Partner Network appointment booking, appointment attendance, and aligners ordered; and a similar process for our impression kits.

- *Referrals:* During the fourth quarter of 2022, we remained strong on our member experience with referrals reaching 20% of all orders. We expect to continue to invest in our member journey to improve our member experience and increase our customer referrals.

- *Downloading our App:* During the fourth quarter of 2022, we launched our AI-powered 3D mobile imaging product, the SmileMaker Platform, in Australia that is an industry first in leveraging AI to allow consumers to take a 3D image of their teeth using their mobile device. The platform will be introduced to the U.S. market in the first half of 2023 with the full rollout to all of the markets we operate in by the end of the year. This innovation not only introduces further-technology powered intelligence to our proprietary teledentistry and treatment planning platform, but may also increase customer conversion and decrease the path to purchase time by giving users an instant and initial view of their potential treatment plan and length of treatment.

SmilePay

We offer SmilePay, a convenient monthly payment plan, to maximize accessibility and provide an affordable option for all of our members. The $250 down payment for SmilePay covers our cost of manufacturing the aligners, and the interest income generated by SmilePay more than offsets the negative impact of delinquencies and cancellations. A number of factors affect delinquency and cancellation rates, including customer-specific circumstances, our efforts in member service and management, and the broader macroeconomic environment.

Investments in Transformative Innovation

We intend to continue investing in our business to support future growth by focusing on strategies that best address our large market opportunity, both domestically and internationally, and focus on cost discipline across the business. These investments include technological advancements that allow us to serve more customers, improve the customer experience and create efficiencies across our organization. Our key growth initiatives include enhancing our existing product platform;

including to improve conversion rate; introducing new products to further differentiate our offerings; expanding our customer acquisition channels; expanding our reach through the professional channel; and expanding our market share with more traditional, higher income customers of clear aligner therapy. Additionally, we are focused on continued advancement in automating and streamlining our manufacturing and treatment planning operations to allow us to stay ahead of consumer demand; continued discipline around marketing and selling investments, including a focus on pushing more demand through our existing SmileShop network and Partner Network, comprised of affiliated dentist offices, and leveraging our referrals, aided awareness, and customer acquisition strategies. We also intend to continue to develop a suite of ancillary products for our members' oral care needs, lengthening our relationship with our members and enhancing our recurring revenue base. As part of these key investment initiatives, we will also continue to explore collaborations with retailers and other third-party partnerships as a component of our strategy.

Pace of adoption for teledentistry

The rate of adoption of teledentistry will impact our ability to acquire new customers and grow our revenue.

Components of Operating Results

Revenues

Our revenues are derived primarily from sales of aligners, impression kits, whitening gel, retainers, and other oral care products, as well as interest earned on SmilePay. Revenues are recorded based on the amount that is expected to be collected, which considers implicit price concessions, discounts, and cancellations and refunds from customer returns. Revenues include revenue recognized from orders shipped in the current period, as well as deferred revenue recognized from orders in prior periods. We offer our members the option of paying the entire cost of their clear aligner treatment upfront or enrolling in *SmilePay,* our convenient monthly payment plan requiring a down payment and a monthly payment for up to 26 months.

Financing revenue includes interest earned on SmilePay aligner orders shipped in prior periods. Our average APR is approximately 21%, which is included in the monthly payment.

Cost of revenues

Cost of revenues includes the total cost of products produced and sold. Such costs include direct materials, direct labor, overhead costs (occupancy costs, indirect labor, and depreciation), fees retained by doctors, freight and duty expenses associated with moving materials from vendors to our facilities and from our facilities to our members, and adjustments for shrinkage (physical inventory losses), lower of cost or net realizable value, slow moving product, and excess inventory quantities.

We manufacture all of our aligners and retainers in our manufacturing facilities. We continue to invest in automating our manufacturing and treatment planning operations, launching our second-generation manufacturing at the end of the third quarter of 2020, which has contributed to increased efficiencies in our manufacturing process and increased margins. We have built extensive supply chain mechanisms that allow us to quickly and accurately create treatment plans and manufacture aligners.

Marketing and selling expenses

Our marketing expenses include costs associated with an omni-channel approach supported by MMM. These costs include online sources, such as social media and paid search, and offline sources, such as television, experiential events, local events, and business-to-business partnerships. We also have comprehensive strategies across search engine optimization, customer relationship management ("CRM") marketing, and earned and owned marketing. We have invested significant resources into optimizing our member conversion process.

Our selling costs include both labor and non-labor expenses associated with our SmileShops, Partner Network, and popup locations and costs associated with our sales and scheduling teams in our customer contact center. Non-labor costs associated with our SmileShops and popup locations include rent, travel, supplies, and depreciation costs associated with digital photography equipment, furniture, and computers, among other costs.

General and administrative expenses

General and administrative expenses include payroll and benefit costs for corporate team members, equity-based compensation expenses, occupancy costs of corporate facilities, bank charges and costs associated with credit and debit card interchange fees, outside service fees, and other administrative costs, such as computer maintenance, supplies, travel, and lodging.

Interest and other expenses

Interest expense includes interest from our financing agreements and other long-term indebtedness. Other expense includes unrealized gains and losses on currency translation adjustments related to certain intercompany loan agreements between legal entities, disposal of long-lived assets, and other non-operating gains and losses.

Provision for income tax expense (benefit)

We are subject to U.S. federal, state, and local income taxes with respect to our allocable share of any taxable income of SDC Financial, and we are taxed at the prevailing corporate tax rates. In addition to tax expenses, we also incur tax expenses related to our operations, as well as payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement. We receive a portion of any distributions made by SDC Financial. Any cash received from such distributions from our subsidiaries will first be used by us to satisfy any tax liability and then to make any payments required under the Tax Receivable Agreement. See Note 9 to our consolidated financial statements.

Adjusted EBITDA

To supplement our consolidated financial statements presented in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP"), we also present Adjusted EBITDA, a financial measure which is not based on any standardized methodology prescribed by GAAP.

We define Adjusted EBITDA as net loss, plus depreciation and amortization, interest expense, income tax expense (benefit), equity-based compensation, loss on extinguishment of debt, impairment of long-lived assets, abandonment and other related charges and certain other non-operating expenses, such as one-time store closure costs associated with our real estate repositioning strategy, severance, retention and other labor costs, certain one-time legal settlement costs, and unrealized foreign currency adjustments. Adjusted EBITDA does not have a definition under GAAP, and our definition of Adjusted EBITDA may not be the same as, or comparable to, similarly titled measures used by other companies. We use Adjusted EBITDA when evaluating our performance when we believe that certain items are not indicative of operating performance. Adjusted EBITDA provides useful supplemental information to management regarding our operating performance, and we believe it will provide the same to members/stockholders.

We believe that Adjusted EBITDA will provide useful information to members/stockholders about our performance, financial condition, and results of operations for the following reasons: (i) Adjusted EBITDA is among the measures used by our management team to evaluate our operating performance and make day-to-day operating decisions and (ii) Adjusted EBITDA is frequently used by securities analysts, investors, lenders, and other interested parties as a common performance measure to compare results or estimate valuations across companies in our industry. Adjusted EBITDA should not be considered in isolation from, or as a substitute for, financial information prepared in accordance with GAAP. A reconciliation of Adjusted EBITDA to net loss, the most directly comparable GAAP financial measure, is set forth below.

Results of Operations

The following table summarizes our historical results of operations. The period-over-period comparison of results of operations is not necessarily indicative of results for future periods. You should read this discussion of our results of operations in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes thereto included elsewhere in this Form 10-K.

	Years Ended December 31,	
(in thousands)	**2022**	**2021**
Statements of Operations Data:		
Total revenues	$ 470,743	$ 637,611
Cost of revenues	142,890	177,597
Gross profit	327,853	460,014
Marketing and selling expenses	290,231	388,450
General and administrative expenses	278,778	325,569
Lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived assets	1,289	1,481
Restructuring and other related costs	19,668	3,798
Loss from operations	(262,113)	(259,284)
Total interest expense	17,961	23,154
Loss on extinguishment of debt	—	47,631
Other expense (income)	(1,579)	4,313
Net loss before provision for income tax expense (benefit)	(278,495)	(334,382)
Provision for income tax expense (benefit)	(642)	1,268
Net loss	(277,853)	(335,650)
Net loss attributable to non-controlling interest	(191,449)	(233,208)
Net loss attributable to SDC Inc.	$ (86,404)	$ (102,442)
Other Data:		
Adjusted EBITDA	$ (134,613)	$ (133,204)

The following table reconciles Adjusted EBITDA to net loss, the most directly comparable GAAP financial measure.

	Years Ended December 31,	
(in thousands)	**2022**	**2021**
Net loss	$ (277,853)	$ (335,650)
Depreciation and amortization	74,395	70,113
Total interest expense	17,961	23,154
Income tax expense (benefit)	(642)	1,268
Lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived assets	1,289	1,481
Restructuring and other related costs	19,668	3,798
Loss on extinguishment of debt	—	47,631
Equity-based compensation	26,608	44,628
Other non-operating general and administrative losses	3,961	10,373
Adjusted EBITDA	$ (134,613)	$ (133,204)

Comparison of the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021

Revenues

Revenues decreased $166.9 million, or 26.2%, to $470.7 million in the year ended December 31, 2022 from $637.6 million in the year ended December 31, 2021. The decrease in revenues was primarily driven by decreased aligner shipments compared to the prior year period as a result of the negative macroeconomic factors impacting our core demographic, including lower discretionary spending and a challenging economic environment impacted by increased inflation.

For the year ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, revenues for the U.S. and Canada were $395.1 million and $525.4 million, or 83.9% and 82.4% of total revenues, respectively, and revenues for the rest of world were $75.7 million and $112.2 million, or 16.1% and 17.6%, respectively.

Cost of revenues

Cost of revenues decreased $34.7 million, or 19.5%, to $142.9 million in the year ended December 31, 2022 from $177.6 million in the year ended December 31, 2021. Cost of revenues increased as a percentage of revenues from 27.9% in the year ended December 31, 2021 to 30.4% in the year ended December 31, 2022, primarily due to the effect of the deleveraging of fixed costs in our manufacturing process as a result of the lower aligner sales for the current year when compared to the prior year. The decrease in overall cost of revenues in the current year as compared to the prior year is primarily due to producing a lower number of aligners in the current year.

Gross margin decreased to 69.6% in the year ended December 31, 2022 from 72.1% in the year ended December 31, 2021, primarily as a result of the factor described above.

Marketing and selling expenses

Marketing and selling expenses as a percentage of revenues increased to 61.7% in the year ended December 31, 2022 from 60.9% in the year ended December 31, 2021, and decreased to $290.2 million in the year ended December 31, 2022 from $388.5 million in the year ended December 31, 2021. The increase in marketing and selling expense as a percentage of sales was primarily due to lower sales in the current year as a result of the negative macroeconomic factors impacting our core demographic, including lower discretionary spending and a challenging economic environment impacted by increased inflation. Total marketing and selling expenses decreased $98.3 million compared to the prior year due to the Company's increased focus on efficiency and leveraging our 60% aided awareness in the marketplace.

General and administrative expenses

General and administrative expenses decreased $46.8 million, or 14.4%, to $278.8 million in the year ended December 31, 2022 from $325.6 million in the year ended December 31, 2021. The decrease was primarily due to lower personnel and support costs resulting from restructuring activities as well as decreased stock-based compensation costs as a result of forfeitures resulting from management team member changes. This decrease was partially offset by higher depreciation and amortization costs as a result of the investments we have made in the business over the last year. General and administrative expenses as a percent of revenue increased from 51.1% in the year ended December 31, 2021 to 59.2% in the year ended December 31, 2022, primarily due to the deleveraging of fixed costs associated with the decrease in sales.

Lease abandonment, impairment of long-lived assets and other store closure and related charges

Lease abandonment, impairment of long-lived assets and other store closure and related costs were $21.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2022, compared to $5.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2021. The charges in the current year are primarily associated with the strategic actions explained above that the company undertook in January 2022, including right-sizing its operating structure as a result of suspending operations in Mexico, Spain, Germany, Netherlands, Austria, Hong Kong, Singapore and New Zealand to improve business performance. In the year ended December 31, 2022, lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived asset costs were $1.3 million and restructuring and other related costs were

$19.7 million which include lease buyouts, regional operating center and SmileShop closure costs and employee related costs, including severance and retention payments associated with the organizational changes. In the year ended December 31, 2021, lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived asset costs were $1.5 million, primarily associated with the closure and consolidation of a portion of our SmileShops and restructuring and other related costs were $3.8 million. We continue to evaluate our SmileShops and other properties to determine if we will further rationalize our footprint to better align with marketplace demand, including direct and indirect effects of the COVID-19 pandemic.

Interest expense

Interest expense decreased $5.2 million to $18.0 million in the year ended December 31, 2022 from $23.2 million in the year ended December 31, 2021, primarily as a result of a change in our capital structure that significantly reduced our effective interest rate on our outstanding debt facilities.

Loss on extinguishment of debt

Loss on extinguishment of debt in the year ended December 31, 2021 was $47.6 million. The prior year expense was in conjunction with the payoff of the 2020 HPS Credit Facility on March 29, 2021. The cost was primarily made up of fees paid in connection with the termination of the 2020 HPS Credit Facility and unamortized fees and warrant costs associated with the initiation of the transaction in fiscal 2020.

Other expense (income)

Other expense (income) increased $5.9 million to income of $1.6 million in the year ended December 31, 2022 from expense of $4.3 million in the year ended December 31, 2021. The increase in income was primarily due to the impact of unrealized foreign currency translation adjustments.

Provision for income tax expense (income)

Our provision for income tax benefit was $0.6 million and income tax expense was $1.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively.

Adjusted EBITDA

For the year ended December 31, 2022, Adjusted EBITDA was negative $134.6 million compared to negative $133.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2021. The decline in Adjusted EBITDA was primarily due to the decrease in aligner revenue as a result of the effects of the macroeconomic factors discussed previously offset by the cost control and restructuring initiatives instituted at the beginning of the year to reduce cash-burn. For the year ended December 31, 2022, Adjusted EBITDA for the U.S. and Canada combined was a negative $92.7 million, and Adjusted EBITDA for the rest of world was negative $41.9 million.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

As of December 31, 2022, SDC Inc. had cash on hand of $118.4 million including $25.3 million in restricted cash, an accumulated deficit of $381.7 million and working capital of $180.6 million. Our operations have been financed primarily through net proceeds from the sale of our equity securities and borrowings under our debt instruments.

Our short-term liquidity needs primarily include working capital, innovation, and research and development. We believe that our current liquidity, including net proceeds received in connection with the financing transactions, will be sufficient to meet our projected operating, investing, and debt service requirements for at least the next 12 months. Our future capital requirements may vary materially from those currently planned and will depend on many factors, including our levels of revenue, the expansion of sales and marketing activities, market acceptance of our clear aligners, the results of research and development and other business initiatives, the timing of new product introductions, and overall economic conditions. To the extent that current and anticipated future sources of liquidity are insufficient to fund our future business activities and

requirements, we may be required to seek additional equity or debt financing. The sale of additional equity would result in additional dilution to our stockholders. The incurrence of additional debt financing would result in debt service obligations, and any future instruments governing such debt could provide for operating and financing covenants that would restrict our operations. In February 2021, we issued approximately $650.0 million aggregate principal amount of convertible senior Notes in a private placement offering. We also issued an additional $97.5 million aggregate principal amount of the Notes to the initial purchasers under an option granted to the initial purchasers. The proceeds of this offering were used by us to enter into privately negotiated capped call transactions with certain of the initial purchasers, which are expected to reduce dilution to the Class A common stock upon any conversion of the Notes, and we used a portion of the remainder of the net proceeds to repay amounts owed under the HPS Credit Facility. In connection with the issuance of the Notes, SmileDirectClub, Inc. entered into an intercompany convertible promissory note ("Intercompany Convertible Note") with SDC Financial, LLC, whereby SmileDirectClub, Inc. provided the net proceeds from the issuance of the Notes to SDC Financial, LLC. The terms of the Intercompany Convertible Note mirror the terms of the Notes issued by SmileDirectClub, Inc. The intent of the Intercompany Convertible Note is to maintain the parity of shares of Class A common stock with LLC Units as required by the SDC Financial LLC Agreement. On April 27, 2022, SPV, a wholly-owned special purpose subsidiary of the Company, entered into a Loan Agreement ("the 2022 HPS Credit Facility") by and among SPV, as borrower, SmileDirectClub, LLC, as the seller and servicer, the lenders from time to time party thereto, and HPS Investment Partners, LLC, as administrative agent and collateral agent, providing a 42-month secured delayed-draw term loan facility to SPV in an aggregate maximum principal amount of up to $255 million. As of December 31, 2022, the outstanding balance on the facility was $126.4 million. The permitted loan balance was $140.4 million based on the underlying accounts receivable balances. Amounts drawn, up to $255 million, but in excess of the permitted loan balance are required to be kept in the SDC U.S. SmilePay SPV and are restricted. The Company was in compliance with all covenants related to the 2022 HPS Credit Facility as of December 31, 2022.

On November 7, 2022, we entered into a distribution agreement with UBS Securities LLC, with respect to an at -the-market offering program under which the Company may, from time to time, offer and sell shares of the Company's Class A common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to $100.0 million. The shares to be sold, if any, will be issued and sold pursuant to the Company's shelf registration statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-267370), which was filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on September 9, 2022, and which was declared effective on October 4, 2022. During fiscal year 2022, the Company sold $1.9 million of Class A common stock pursuant to the distribution agreement and has $98.1 million available.

We are a holding company with no operations of our own and, as such, we depend on our subsidiaries for cash to fund all of our operations and expenses. We depend on the payment of distributions by our subsidiaries, and such distributions may be restricted as a result of regulatory restrictions, state and international laws regarding distributions, or contractual agreements, including agreements governing indebtedness. For a discussion of those restrictions, see "Risk Factors—Risks Related to Our Organization and Structure—We are a holding company. Our sole material asset is our equity interest in SDC Financial, and as such, we depend on our subsidiaries for cash to fund all of our expenses, including taxes and payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement." We currently anticipate that such restrictions will not impact our ability to meet our cash obligations.

Cash flows

The following table sets forth a summary of our cash flows for the periods indicated.

	Years Ended December 31,	
(in thousands)	**2022**	**2021**
Net cash used in operating activities	$ (158,174)	$ (141,519)
Net cash used in investing activities	(51,996)	(106,567)
Net cash provided by financing activities	103,448	155,717
Effect of changes in exchange rates on cash and cash equivalents	260	505
Decrease in cash and restricted cash	(106,462)	(91,864)
Cash and restricted cash at beginning of period	224,860	316,724
Cash and restricted cash at end of period	$ 118,398	$ 224,860

Comparison of the year ended December 31, 2022 and 2021

As of December 31, 2022, we had $118.4 million in cash and restricted cash, a decrease of $106.5 million compared to $224.9 million as of December 31, 2021.

Cash used in operating activities increased to $158.2 million during the year ended December 31, 2022 compared to $141.5 million in the year ended December 31, 2021, or an increase of $16.7 million, primarily due to the change in working capital primarily due to the timing of payments and the decrease in overall spend in the current year when compared to the prior year.

Cash used in investing activities decreased to $52.0 million during the year ended December 31, 2022, compared to $106.6 million in the year ended December 31, 2021. The decrease in cash used in investing was primarily due to cost reduction activities including a more focused investment portfolio on near-term profit projects. Cash used in investing activities primarily consists of costs to develop technology innovation and software as well as purchases of manufacturing automation equipment and investments in technology equipment.

Cash provided by financing activities was $103.4 million during the year ended December 31, 2022, compared to cash provided by financing activities of $155.7 million in the year ended December 31, 2021. Cash provided by financing activities during the year ended December 31, 2022 primarily consists of net borrowings under our long-term debt facility of $114.9 million and $1.9 million proceeds from the sale of Class A common stock under our ATM facility offset by the payment of issuance costs, share purchase activity and the payment of financed leases. Cash provided by financing activities in the year ended December 31, 2021 primarily consists of the issuance of approximately $747.5 million principal amount of the 2026 Convertible Senior Notes in a private placement offering, including options. We incurred transaction costs associated with the issuance of the Notes of $21.2 million and entered into privately negotiated capped call transactions with certain of the initial purchasers in the amount of approximately $69.5 million, which are expected to reduce dilution to the Class A common stockholders upon any conversion of the Notes. Approximately $434.2 million of the proceeds from the Notes were used to repay the 2020 HPS Credit Facility in full, including certain prepayment and make-whole provisions. In addition, we paid Align Technology, Inc. the remaining $43.4 million of equity value previously accrued plus interest pursuant to an arbitration award.

Tax Receivable Agreement

Our purchase of LLC Units from SDC Financial, coupled with SDC Financial's purchase and cancellation of LLC Units from the Pre-IPO investors in connection with the IPO and any future exchanges of LLC Units for our Class A common stock or cash are expected to result in increases in our allocable tax basis in the assets of SDC Financial that otherwise would not have been available to us. These increases in tax basis are expected to provide us with certain tax benefits that can reduce the amount of cash tax that we otherwise would be required to pay in the future. We and SDC Financial are parties to the Tax Receivable Agreement with the Continuing LLC Members, pursuant to which we are obligated to pay the Continuing LLC

Members 85% of the cash savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state, and local income tax or franchise tax that we actually realize as a result of (a) the increases in tax basis attributable to exchanges by Continuing LLC Members and (b) tax benefits related to imputed interest deemed to be paid by us as a result of the Tax Receivable Agreement. The amounts to be recorded for both the deferred tax assets and the liability for our obligations under the Tax Receivable Agreement will be estimated at the time of an exchange of LLC Units. All of the effects of changes in any of our estimates after the date of the exchange will be included in net loss. Similarly, the effect of subsequent changes in the enacted tax rates will be included in net loss. Because we are the managing member of SDC Financial, which is the managing member of SDC LLC, which is the managing member of SDC Holding, we have the ability to determine when distributions (other than tax distributions) will be made by SDC Holding to SDC LLC and by SDC LLC to SDC Financial and the amount of any such distributions, subject to limitations imposed by applicable law and contractual restrictions (including pursuant to our debt instruments). Any such distributions will then be distributed to all holders of LLC Units, including us, pro rata based on holdings of LLC Units. The cash received from such distributions will first be used by us to satisfy any tax liability and then to make any payments required under the Tax Receivable Agreement. We expect that such distributions will be sufficient to fund both our tax liability and the required payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement.

Indebtedness

2022 HPS Credit Facility

On April 27, 2022, SPV, a wholly-owned special purpose subsidiary of the Company, entered into a Loan Agreement (the "2022 HPS Credit Facility") by and among SPV, as borrower, SmileDirectClub, LLC, as the seller and servicer, the lenders from time to time party thereto, and HPS Investment Partners, LLC, as administrative agent and collateral agent, providing a 42-month secured delayed-draw term loan facility to SPV in an aggregate maximum principal amount of up to $255 million.

Outstanding loans under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility bear interest at a variable rate equal to (i) subject to a 1.00% per annum floor, three-month LIBOR plus 10.75% per annum, of which interest accrued at up to 3.75% per annum may be payable in kind, or (ii) subject to a 2.00% per annum floor, an interest rate equal to the greater of (a) the prime rate in effect from time to time and (b) the federal funds rate in effect from time to time plus 0.5%, plus in each case 9.75% per annum, of which, in each of the foregoing cases, interest accrued at up to 3.75% per annum may be payable in kind. In addition to paying interest on the outstanding principal balance, the Company is required to pay lender's commitment fee of 2.75% per annum based on the unused facility amount. Subject to certain exceptions, the 2022 HPS Credit Facility is secured by first-priority security interests in SPV's assets, which consist of certain receivables, cash, intellectual property and related assets. SPV's obligations under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility are guaranteed on a limited basis by SmileDirectClub, LLC and SDC Financial LLC (collectively, the "Guarantors"). The Guarantors guarantee (i) on a full recourse basis, up to 10% of SPV's outstanding obligations under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility plus enforcement costs, and (ii) certain losses incurred by the lenders as a result of fraud, misrepresentation, legal and regulation violations and certain other actions and omissions by SPV and/or certain of its affiliates. The Guarantors do not pledge their assets to secure any obligations of SPV under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility. As of December 31, 2022, the outstanding balance on the facility was $126.4 million. The permitted loan balance was $140.4 million based on the underlying accounts receivable balances. Amounts drawn, up to $255 million, but in excess of the permitted loan balance are required to be kept in the SDC U.S. SmilePay SPV and are restricted. The Company was in compliance with all covenants related to the 2022 HPS Credit Facility as of December 31, 2022.

2026 Convertible Senior Notes

On February 9, 2021 we issued $650.0 million principal amount of Notes and also granted the initial purchasers of the Notes an option to purchase up to an additional $97.5 million aggregate principal amount of the Notes. The sale of the Notes concluded on February 16, 2021, with the initial purchasers exercising their options in full to buy the additional Notes. The Notes were issued and governed by an indenture, dated February 9, 2021 (the "Indenture"), between us and Wilmington Trust, National Association, as trustee. Overall, we incurred $747.5 million principal amount of indebtedness as a result of this offering.

A portion of the proceeds of the offering of the Notes were used to fund the cost of privately negotiated capped call transactions with certain initial purchasers, and we used a portion of the remainder of the net proceeds to repay amounts owed under the 2020 HPS Credit Facility.

The Notes will mature on February 1, 2026, unless earlier repurchased, redeemed or converted. The Notes will not bear regular interest, and the principal amount of the Notes will not accrete.

If certain corporate events that constitute a "Fundamental Change" (as defined in the Indenture) occur or "Events of Default" (as defined in the Indenture) occur, then noteholders may require the Company to repurchase their Notes at a cash repurchase price equal to the principal amount of the Notes to be repurchased, plus accrued and unpaid special interest, if any.

2020 HPS Credit Facility

On May 12, 2020, we and a wholly-owned special purpose subsidiary, SDC U.S. SmilePay SPV ("SPV"), entered into a Loan Agreement (the "2020 HPS Credit Facility") among SPV, as borrower, SmileDirectClub, LLC, as the seller and servicer, certain lenders, and HPS Investment Partners, LLC, as administrative agent and collateral agent, providing a five-year secured term loan facility to SPV in an initial aggregate maximum principal amount of $400 million, with the ability to request incremental term loans of up to an additional aggregate principal amount of $100 million with the consent of the lenders participating in such increase.

On March 29, 2021, the 2020 HPS Credit Facility was repaid in full.

Tax Receivable Agreement

The payments that we may be required to make under the Tax Receivable Agreement to the Continuing LLC Members may be significant and are dependent upon future taxable income.

Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates

The discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations are based on our consolidated financial statements, which we have prepared in accordance with GAAP. The preparation of consolidated financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that impact the reported amounts. On an ongoing basis, we evaluate our estimates, including those related to revenue recognition and equity-based compensation, among others. Each of these estimates varies in regard to the level of judgment involved and its potential impact on our financial results. Estimates are considered critical either 1) when a different estimate could have reasonably been used, or 2) where changes in the estimate are reasonably likely to occur from period to period, and such use or change would materially impact our financial condition, results of operations, or cash flows. Actual results could differ from those estimates. While our significant accounting policies are more fully described in Note 2 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K, we believe that the following accounting policies and estimates are most critical to a full understanding and evaluation of our reported financial results.

Revenue recognition

Our revenue is generated through sales of aligners, retainers, and other oral care products. Our aligner sales commitment contains multiple promises which may include (i) initial aligners, and (ii) touch-up aligners. Our members are eligible for modified or refinement aligners, which we refer to as "touch-up aligners," at any point during their treatment plan or immediately following their original treatment plan (which is typically between five and ten months), in each case, upon the direction of, and pursuant to a prescription from, the treating dentist or orthodontist. Under Accounting Standard Codification

606, Revenue from Contracts with Customers ("ASC 606"), we evaluate whether the initial aligners and touch-up aligners represent separate or combined performance obligations. We have determined that these promises, within the aligner sales commitment, represent separate performance obligations.

The terms of the aligner and retainer sales include member rights to cancel the orders and return unopened aligner, impression kit, or retainer boxes for a refund of any consideration paid related to the returned products. The rights of return create variability in the amount of transaction consideration, and in turn, revenue we can recognize for fulfilling related performance obligations. We recognize revenue based on the amount of consideration to which we expect to be entitled, which excludes consideration received for products expected to be cancelled or refunded due to customer returns. Accordingly, we are required to make estimates of expected returns and related revenue adjustments. We estimate expected customer returns based upon our assessment of historical and expected cancellations. The estimated expected refunds are recorded as a refund liability.

We offer our customers the option of paying for the entire cost of their aligners upfront or enrolling in SmilePay, a convenient monthly payment plan that requires a $250 down payment, with the remaining consideration due over a period up to 26 months. Approximately 60% of our customers elect to purchase our aligners using SmilePay. The amount of contract consideration we estimate to be collectible from our SmilePay customers results in an implicit price concession. We estimate the amount of implicit price concession based upon our assessment of historical write-offs and expected net collections, business and economic conditions, including the inflationary environment and the uncertainty of the lasting effects of the COVID-19 pandemic, and other collection indicators. We believe our analysis provides reasonable estimates of our revenues and valuations of our accounts receivable.

Revenue is recognized for touch-up aligners when the promised goods are transferred to the customer. Touch-up aligners represent a promise to transfer goods to customers, and not all customers order touch-up aligners. We make our best estimate of touch-up aligner customer usage rates, which we use to determine the amount of revenue to allocate to those performance obligations at inception of our aligner sales commitment. Our process for estimating usage rates requires significant judgment and evaluation of inputs, including historical data and forecasted usages. Any material changes to usage rates could impact the timing of revenue recognition, which may have a material effect on our financial position and result of operations.

Amounts received prior to satisfying the above revenue recognition criteria are recorded as a contract liability in deferred revenue in our historical consolidated balance sheets. The deferred revenue balance is subject to fluctuation depending on the timing and fulfillment of aligner orders.

Equity-based compensation

We account for equity-based compensation for team members in accordance with ASC 718, "*Compensation-Stock Compensation*." In accordance with ASC 718, compensation cost is measured at estimated fair value on grant date and is included as compensation expense over the vesting period during which a team member provides service in exchange for the award.

We used the Black-Scholes Option Pricing Method to allocate the total equity fair value to outstanding Options. The Black-Scholes Option Pricing Method includes various assumptions, including the expected life of Options, the expected volatility, and the expected risk-free interest rate. These assumptions reflect our best estimates, but they involve inherent uncertainties based on market conditions generally outside our control. As a result, if other assumptions had been used, equity-based compensation cost could have been materially impacted. Furthermore, if we use different assumptions for future grants, equity-based compensation cost could be materially impacted in future periods.

The fair value of RSUs is determined by our stock price on the date of grant and related compensation expense is generally recognized over the requisite service period.

Income tax expense (benefit)

We are the managing member of SDC Financial and, as a result, consolidate the financial results of SDC Financial. SDC Financial and its subsidiaries are limited liability companies and have elected to be taxed as partnerships for income tax purposes except for a subsidiary, SDC Holding, that is treated like a corporation. As such, SDC Financial does not pay any federal income taxes, as any income or loss will be included in the tax returns of the individual members. SDC Financial does pay state income tax in certain jurisdictions, and the Company's income tax provision in the consolidated financial statements reflects the income taxes for those states. Additionally, certain wholly-owned entities are required to be looked at on a stand-alone basis resulting in federal income taxes, and such federal income taxes are included in the consolidated financial statements.

We use the asset and liability method to account for income taxes and apply the principles of ASC 740, *"Income Taxes,"* in determining when our tax positions should be recognized. Under this method, deferred income tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. If a net operating loss carryforward exists, we make a determination as to whether that net operating loss carryforward will be utilized in the future. A valuation allowance will be established for certain net operating loss carryforwards and other deferred tax assets where the recoverability is deemed to be uncertain. The carrying value of the net deferred tax assets is based upon estimates and assumptions related to our ability to generate sufficient future taxable income in certain tax jurisdictions. If these estimates and related assumptions change in the future, we will be required to adjust our deferred tax valuation allowances.

In connection with the Reorganization Transactions and the IPO, we entered into the Tax Receivable Agreement with certain of the Continuing LLC Members that provides for the payment by us of 85% of the amount of any tax benefits that the Company actually realizes, or in some cases is deemed to realize, as a result of (i) increases in the Company's share of the tax basis in the net assets of SDC Financial resulting from any redemptions or exchanges of LLC Units, (ii) tax basis increases attributable to payments made under the Tax Receivable Agreement, and (iii) deductions attributable to imputed interest pursuant to the Tax Receivable Agreement (the "TRA Payments"). We expect to benefit from the remaining 15% of any of cash savings, if any, that we realize.

The amounts payable under the Tax Receivable Agreement will vary depending upon a number of factors, including the amount, character, and timing of the taxable income of the Company in the future. If the valuation allowance recorded against the deferred tax assets applicable to the tax attributes referenced above is released in a future period, the Tax Receivable Agreement liability may be considered probable at that time and recorded within earnings.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

For a discussion of new accounting pronouncements recently adopted and not yet adopted, see Note 2 to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk

Interest rate risk

Our cash and cash equivalents consist primarily of an interest-bearing accounts at large U.S. banks with limited interest rate risk. We intend to maintain our portfolio of cash equivalents in a variety of investment-grade securities, which may include commercial paper, money market funds, and government and non-government debt securities. Because of the short-term maturities of our cash and cash equivalents and marketable securities, we do not believe that an increase in market rates would have any significant negative impact on the realized value of our investments. At December 31, 2022, we held no investments in marketable securities.

On February 9, 2021 we issued $650.0 million principal amount of Notes and also granted the initial purchasers of the Notes an option to purchase up to an additional $97.5 million aggregate principal amount of the Notes. The sale of the Notes concluded on February 16, 2021, with the initial purchasers exercising their options, in full, to buy the additional Notes. Overall, we incurred $747.5 million principal amount of indebtedness as a result of this offering. The Notes were issued at a 0.0% coupon rate.

A portion of the proceeds of the offering of the Notes were used to fund the cost of privately negotiated capped call transactions with certain initial purchasers, and we used a portion of the remainder of the net proceeds to repay amounts owed under the 2020 HPS Credit Facility.

On April 27, 2022, SPV, a wholly-owned special purpose subsidiary of the Company, entered into a Loan Agreement by and among SPV, as borrower, SmileDirectClub, LLC, as the seller and servicer, the lenders from time to time party thereto, and HPS Investment Partners, LLC, as administrative agent and collateral agent, providing a 42-month secured delayed-draw term loan facility to SPV in an aggregate maximum principal amount of up to $255.0 million.

Foreign currency exchange risk

A substantial majority of our revenue, cost, expense and capital purchasing activities for the year ended December 31, 2022 were transacted in United States dollars. We are also exposed to changes in foreign exchange rates due to our international presence. Currently, our international revenue is predominantly from Canada and the U.K. and denominated in Canadian dollars and Great British Pounds, respectively, with a limited portion from Australia, Ireland, and France, and denominated in their local currencies. In the future, if we continue to expand into additional international jurisdictions, we expect that our international sales will be primarily denominated in foreign currencies and that any unfavorable movement in the exchange rate between U.S. dollars and the currencies in which we conduct foreign sales could have an adverse impact on our revenue. To minimize this risk, our expenses, other than manufacturing, are incurred in local currency to effectively create a natural hedge against currency risk.

A portion of our operating expenses are incurred outside the United States and are denominated in foreign currencies, which are also subject to fluctuations due to changes in foreign currency exchange rates. In particular, in our Costa Rican operations, we pay payroll and other expenses in Costa Rican colones. In addition, our suppliers incur many costs, including labor costs, in other currencies. To the extent that exchange rates move unfavorably for our suppliers, they may seek to pass these additional costs on to us, which could have a material impact on our gross margins. Our operating results and cash flows are, therefore, subject to fluctuations due to changes in foreign currency exchange rates. However, we believe that the exposure to foreign currency fluctuation from operating expenses is relatively small at this time as the related costs do not constitute a significant portion of our total expenses.

Our exposures to foreign currency risks may change as we continue to grow our international operations and could have a material adverse impact on our financial results. We may in the future hedge our foreign currency exposure and may use currency forward contracts, currency options, and/or other common derivative financial instruments to reduce foreign currency risk. It is difficult to predict the effect any future hedging activities would have on our operating results.

Inflation risk

Inflationary factors, such as increases in our cost of revenues, advertising costs and other selling and operating expenses, may adversely affect our operating results. A high rate of inflation may have an adverse effect on our ability to maintain and increase our gross margin or to maintain current levels of selling, general, administrative and other operating expenses as a percentage of revenues if the selling price of our products do not increase with these increased costs.

Credit risk

We are exposed to credit risk through our SmilePay financing option. For the year ended December 31, 2022, approximately 60% of our customers chose to finance their treatment through SmilePay. For the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, SmilePay amounted to approximately $187.0 million and $243.8 million in net receivables and associated delinquency rates of 11%. We may experience an increase in payment defaults and uncollectible accounts, and may be required to revise our collection estimates, which would adversely affect our revenue and net loss.

Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data

Information with respect to this Item is contained in our consolidated financial statements beginning on Page F-1 of this Annual Report.

Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure

None.

Item 9A. Controls and Procedures

Disclosure Controls and Procedures

Our management under the supervision and with the participation of the Company's Chief Executive Officer ("CEO") and Chief Financial Officer ("CFO") is responsible for establishing and maintaining "disclosure controls and procedures" (as defined in rules promulgated under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended) for the Company. Based on their evaluation the CEO and CFO have concluded that the Company's disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of December 31, 2022.

Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

We are responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting as defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Exchange Act. Our internal control over financial reporting is designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that:

- pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of our assets;
- provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that our receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with authorizations of our management and directors; and
- provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of our assets that could have a material effect on our consolidated financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. In addition, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions and that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

We assessed the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2022. In making this assessment, we used the criteria set forth in the Internal Control-Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). Based on our assessment, we believe that as of December 31, 2022, our internal control over financial reporting is effective based on those criteria.

The effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2022, has been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, the independent registered public accounting firm who also audited the Company's consolidated financial statements included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Ernst & Young LLP's report on the Company's internal control over financial reporting is included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

There was no change in our internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Rules 13a-15(d) and 15d-15(d) under the Exchange Act) during the period covered by this Annual Report on Form 10-K that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

Item 9B. Other Information

On February 27, 2023, the Compensation Committee of the Board approved an increase in the value of the annual grant of restricted stock units to be awarded to Troy Crawford, the Company's Chief Financial Officer, to $2.0 million.

Item 9C. Disclosure Regarding Foreign Jurisdictions That Prevent Inspections

None.

PART III

Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference from our Proxy Statement relating to our 2023 Meeting of Stockholders. The Proxy Statement will be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission within 120 days after the end of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

In addition, certain other information relating to the Executive Officers of the Company appears in Part I of this Annual Report on Form 10-K under the heading "Information about our Executive Officers."

Code of Ethics

We have a code of ethics that applies to all of our employees, including our principal executive officer, principal financial officer and principal accounting officer. This code of ethics is posted on our Internet website. The Internet address for our website is www.smiledirectclub.com, and the code of ethics may be found on the “Corporate Governance” section of our “Investor Relations” webpage.

We intend to satisfy the disclosure requirement under Item 5.05 of Form 8-K regarding an amendment to, or waiver from, a provision of this code of ethics by posting such information on our website, at the address and location specified above, or as otherwise required by the NASDAQ Global Select Market.

Item 11. Executive Compensation

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference from our Proxy Statement relating to our 2023 Meeting of Stockholders. The Proxy Statement will be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission within 120 days after the end of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference from our Proxy Statement relating to our 2023 Meeting of Stockholders. The Proxy Statement will be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission within 120 days after the end of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions and Director Independence

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference from our Proxy Statement relating to our 2023 Meeting of Stockholders. The Proxy Statement will be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission within 120 days after the end of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

Item 14. Principal Accounting Fees and Services

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference from our Proxy Statement relating to our 2023 Meeting of Stockholders. The Proxy Statement will be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission within 120 days after the end of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

PART IV

Item 15. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules

(a) List of Documents Filed

1 Financial Statements

All financial statements are set forth under "Item 8—Financial Statements and Supplementary Data" of this Annual Report.

2 Financial Statement Schedules

All other financial statement schedules are omitted because they are not applicable or the required information is shown in the Consolidated Financial Statements or notes thereto.

Schedule II — Valuation and Qualifying Accounts and Reserves for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021, and 2020:

Description	Balance at Beginning of Year	Charged to Revenue	Charged to Other Accounts	Write-offs and Other Adjustments	Balance at End of Year
Allowance for credit losses and other revenue adjustments:					
Year ended December 31, 2020	$ 49,365	$ 125,938	$ 522	$ (126,561)	$ 49,264
Year ended December 31, 2021	$ 49,264	$ 109,806	$ 814	$ (116,787)	$ 43,097
Year ended December 31, 2022	$ 43,097	$ 86,040	$ (377)	$ (96,198)	$ 32,562

3 Exhibits

The list of exhibits filed as part of this Annual Report is submitted in the Exhibit Index and is incorporated herein by reference.

Index to Financial Statements

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm
To the Shareholders and the Board of Directors of SmileDirectClub, Inc.

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of SmileDirectClub, Inc. (the Company) as of December 31, 2022 and 2021, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, changes in equity (deficit) and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2022, and the related notes and financial statement schedule listed in the Index at Item 15(a) (collectively referred to as the "consolidated financial statements"). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company at December 31, 2022 and 2021, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2022, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2022, based on criteria established in Internal Control-Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (2013 framework) and our report dated February 28, 2023, expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Critical Audit Matter

The critical audit matter communicated below is a matter arising from the current period audit of the financial statements that was communicated or required to be communicated to the audit committee and that: (1) relates to accounts or disclosures that are material to the financial statements and (2) involved our especially challenging, subjective or complex judgments. The communication of the critical audit matter does not alter in any way our opinion on the consolidated financial statements, taken as a whole, and we are not, by communicating the critical audit matter below, providing a separate opinion on the critical audit matter or on the accounts or disclosures to which it relates.

Revenue Recognition – Implicit Price Concessions and Cancellations

Description of the Matter

For the year ended December 31, 2022, the Company's net revenues were $470.7 million, net of implicit price concessions, cancellations and refunds of $94.6 million. As discussed in Note 2 to the consolidated financial statements, revenue is recorded for all customers based on the amount that is expected to be collected, which considers implicit price concessions, and cancellations and refunds from customer returns. The Company bills its customers either upfront for the full cost of aligners or monthly through its SmilePay financing program, which involves a down payment and a fixed amount per month for up to 26 months. The Company's accounts receivable related to the SmilePay financing program are reported at the amount expected to be collected on the consolidated balance sheets, which considers implicit price concessions. Financing revenue from its accounts receivable is recognized based on the contractual market interest rate with the customer, net of implicit price concessions. The Company recorded estimated implicit price concessions related to SmilePay members to reflect the revenues and accounts receivable at the estimated amounts expected to be collected based upon management's assessment of historical write-offs and expected net collections, business and economic conditions, and other collection indicators. The Company also offers return rights that create variability in the amount of transaction consideration that can be recorded related to cancellations and refunds from customer returns. The Company recorded revenue adjustments to reflect the revenues at the estimated amount to be collected based upon management's assessment of historical and expected cancellations and refunds.

Auditing the Company's estimates of implicit price concessions and cancellations is complex due to the significant uncertainty inherent to the estimate, the application of management judgment, and the subjective assumptions as noted above utilized in estimating the expected amounts to be collected.

How We Addressed the Matter in Our Audit

We obtained an understanding, evaluated the design and tested the operating effectiveness of controls over the Company's process for estimating implicit price concessions and cancellations, including management's review of the assumptions used, results of calculations and assessment of the underlying data.

To test the estimated implicit price concessions and cancellations, our audit procedures included, among others, evaluating the estimation methodologies used, the significant assumptions described above, and the underlying data used by the Company. We performed testing over the completeness and accuracy of data inputs used by the Company in the estimation process, including historical collection experience and historical and expected cancellations. We compared the significant assumptions used by management to current business and economic trends and considered changes to the Company's business and other relevant factors. We performed sensitivity analyses of the impact of changes to the assumptions on the resulting estimate of the implicit price concessions and cancellations. We also assessed the historical accuracy of management's estimates based on subsequent cancellation and collection experience as a source of potential corroborative or contrary evidence regarding the assumptions used by management in the estimation process.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2018.
Nashville, Tennessee
February 28, 2023

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm
To the Shareholders and the Board of Directors of SmileDirectClub, Inc.

Opinion on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

We have audited SmileDirectClub, Inc.'s internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2022, based on criteria established in Internal Control—Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (2013 framework) (the COSO criteria). In our opinion, SmileDirectClub, Inc. (the Company) maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2022, based on the COSO criteria.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the consolidated balance sheets of SmileDirectClub, Inc. as of December 31, 2022 and 2021, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, changes in equity (deficit) and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2022, and the related notes and schedule and our report dated February 28, 2023 expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Basis for Opinion

The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting included in the accompanying Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects.

Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Definition and Limitations of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP
Nashville, Tennessee
February 28, 2023

Item 16. Form 10-K Summary

None.

SmileDirectClub, Inc.
Consolidated Balance Sheets
(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
ASSETS		
Cash	$ 93,120	$ 224,860
Accounts receivable, net	143,082	184,558
Inventories	44,387	40,803
Prepaid and other current assets	16,830	17,519
Total current assets	297,419	467,740
Restricted cash	25,278	—
Accounts receivable, net, non-current	45,168	59,210
Property, plant and equipment, net	190,087	227,201
Operating lease right-of-use assets	21,141	24,927
Other assets	17,970	15,480
Total assets	$ 597,063	$ 794,558
LIABILITIES AND EQUITY (DEFICIT)		
Accounts payable	$ 30,513	$ 19,922
Accrued liabilities	65,937	122,066
Deferred revenue	13,646	20,258
Current portion of long-term debt	—	10,997
Other current liabilities	6,704	4,997
Total current liabilities	116,800	178,240
Long-term debt, net of current portion	849,379	729,973
Operating lease liabilities, net of current portion	16,082	20,352
Other long-term liabilities	—	347
Total liabilities	982,261	928,912
Equity (Deficit)		
Class A common stock, par value $0.0001 and 124,785,562 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2022 and 119,280,781 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2021	12	12
Class B common stock, par value $0.0001 and 268,823,501 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2022 and 269,243,501 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2021	27	27
Additional paid-in-capital	475,034	448,867
Accumulated other comprehensive income	430	293
Accumulated deficit	(381,725)	(295,321)
Noncontrolling interest	(496,596)	(305,852)
Warrants	17,620	17,620
Total equity (deficit)	(385,198)	(134,354)
Total liabilities and equity (deficit)	$ 597,063	$ 794,558

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

SmileDirectClub, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Operations
(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	**2021**	**2020**
Revenue, net	$ 436,965	$ 594,692	$ 607,373
Financing revenue	33,778	42,919	49,407
Total revenues	470,743	637,611	656,780
Cost of revenues	142,890	177,597	206,852
Gross profit	327,853	460,014	449,928
Marketing and selling expenses	290,231	388,450	322,919
General and administrative expenses	278,778	325,569	311,982
Lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived assets	1,289	1,481	25,457
Restructuring and other related costs	19,668	3,798	7,034
Loss from operations	(262,113)	(259,284)	(217,464)
Interest expense	17,961	23,154	45,010
Loss on extinguishment of debt	—	47,631	13,781
Other expense (income)	(1,579)	4,313	(878)
Net loss before provision for income tax expense (benefit)	(278,495)	(334,382)	(275,377)
Provision for income tax expense (benefit)	(642)	1,268	3,122
Net loss	(277,853)	(335,650)	(278,499)
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(191,449)	(233,208)	(200,133)
Net loss attributable to SmileDirectClub, Inc.	$ (86,404)	$ (102,442)	$ (78,366)
Earnings (loss) per share of Class A common stock:			
Basic	$ (0.71)	$ (0.87)	$ (0.71)
Diluted	$ (0.71)	$ (0.87)	$ (0.72)
Weighted average shares outstanding:			
Basic	121,312,580	118,360,801	109,854,360
Diluted	390,210,985	387,775,890	385,200,442

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

SmileDirectClub, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss
(in thousands)

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	**2021**	**2020**
Net loss	$ (277,853)	$ (335,650)	$ (278,499)
Other comprehensive income:			
Foreign currency translation adjustment	457	1,295	663
Comprehensive loss	(277,396)	(334,355)	(277,836)
Comprehensive loss attributable to noncontrolling interests	(191,129)	(232,308)	(199,640)
Comprehensive loss attributable to SmileDirectClub, Inc.	$ (86,267)	$ (102,047)	$ (78,196)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

SmileDirectClub, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Changes in Equity (Deficit)
(in thousands, except share amounts)

	SmileDirectClub, Inc. Stockholders' Equity (Deficit)									
	Class A Shares	Class B Shares	Class A Amount	Class B Amount	Additional Paid-in Capital	Warrants	Accumulated Deficit	Noncontrolling Interest	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)	Total
Balance at December 31, 2019	103,303,674	279,474,505	$ 10	$ 28	$ 447,866	$ —	$ (114,513)	$ 125,166	$ (272)	$ 458,285
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	(78,366)	(200,133)	—	(278,499)
Issuance of Class A shares in connection with equity-based awards	2,100,320	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of Class B shares in connection with warrant exercise	—	1,459,386	—	—	(15)	—	—	937	—	922
Exchange of Class B common stock for Class A common stock	10,025,325	(10,025,325)	1	(1)	395	—	—	(395)	—	—
HPS Warrant issuance	—	—	—	—	—	17,620	—	—	—	17,620
Equity-based compensation	—	—	—	—	44,903	—	—	—	—	44,903
Equity-based payments	—	—	—	—	(9,901)	—	—	—	—	(9,901)
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	493	170	663
Other	—	—	—	—	145	—	—	—	—	145
Balance at December 31, 2020	115,429,319	270,908,566	$ 11	$ 27	$ 483,393	$ 17,620	$ (192,879)	$ (73,932)	$ (102)	$ 234,138
Balance at December 31, 2020	115,429,319	270,908,566	$ 11	$ 27	$ 483,393	$ 17,620	$ (192,879)	$ (73,932)	$ (102)	$ 234,138
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	(102,442)	(233,208)	—	(335,650)
Issuance of Class A shares in connection with equity-based awards	2,011,602	—	1	—	(1)	—	—	—	—	—
Exchange of Class B common stock for Class A common stock	1,665,065	(1,665,065)	—	—	(388)	—	—	388	—	—
Issuance of shares in connection with stock purchase plan	174,795	—	—	—	1,031	—	—	—	—	1,031
Equity-based compensation	—	—	—	—	44,628	—	—	—	—	44,628
Equity-based payments	—	—	—	—	(10,028)	—	—	—	—	(10,028)
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	900	395	1,295
Capped call instruments	—	—	—	—	(69,518)	—	—	—	—	(69,518)
Other	—	—	—	—	(250)	—	—	—	—	(250)
Balance at December 31, 2021	119,280,781	269,243,501	$ 12	$ 27	$ 448,867	$ 17,620	$ (295,321)	$ (305,852)	$ 293	$ (134,354)

SmileDirectClub, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Changes in Equity (Deficit)
(in thousands, except share amounts)

	SmileDirectClub, Inc. Stockholders' Equity									
	Class A Shares	Class B Shares	Class A Amount	Class B Amount	Additional Paid-in Capital	Warrants	Accumulated Deficit	Noncontrolling Interest	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income	Total
Balance at December 31, 2021	119,280,781	269,243,501	$ 12	$ 27	$ 448,867	$ 17,620	$ (295,321)	$ (305,852)	$ 293	$ (134,354)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	(86,404)	(191,449)	—	(277,853)
Issuance of Class A shares in connection with equity-based awards	1,546,265	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of Class A shares under public offerings, net of issuance costs	2,950,069	—	—	—	1,916	—	—	—	—	1,916
Exchange of Class B common stock for Class A common stock	420,000	(420,000)	—	—	(385)	—	—	385	—	—
Issuance of shares in connection with stock purchase plan	588,447	—	—	—	622	—	—	—	—	622
Equity-based compensation	—	—	—	—	26,608	—	—	—	—	26,608
Equity-based payments	—	—	—	—	(2,599)	—	—	—	—	(2,599)
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	320	137	457
Other	—	—	—	—	5	—	—	—	—	5
Balance at December 31, 2022	124,785,562	268,823,501	$ 12	$ 27	$ 475,034	$ 17,620	$ (381,725)	$ (496,596)	$ 430	$ (385,198)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

SmileDirectClub, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
(in thousands)

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	**2021**	**2020**
Operating Activities			
Net loss	$ (277,853)	$ (335,650)	$ (278,499)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	74,395	70,113	56,390
Deferred loan cost amortization	5,897	5,148	4,407
Equity-based compensation	26,608	44,628	44,903
Loss on extinguishment of debt	—	47,631	13,594
Paid in kind interest expense	1,292	3,324	8,450
Asset impairment and related charges	2,902	1,481	27,767
Other non-cash operating activities	3,786	372	10,071
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	55,518	49,560	52,400
Inventories	(4,227)	(11,775)	(11,602)
Prepaid and other current assets	689	(8,733)	(378)
Accounts payable	14,242	(11,296)	(7,670)
Accrued liabilities	(54,811)	10,039	(4,585)
Deferred revenue	(6,612)	(6,361)	1,184
Net cash used in operating activities	(158,174)	(141,519)	(83,568)
Investing Activities			
Purchases of property, equipment, and intangible assets	(51,996)	(106,567)	(97,141)
Net cash used in investing activities	(51,996)	(106,567)	(97,141)
Financing Activities			
IPO proceeds, net of discount and related fees	—	—	(1,155)
Proceeds from warrant exercise	—	—	922
Repurchase of Class A shares to cover employee tax withholdings	(2,599)	(10,028)	(9,901)
Proceeds from sale of Class A common stock under public offerings	1,916	—	—
Proceeds from stock purchase plan	622	1,031	—
Repayment of 2020 HPS Credit Facility	—	(396,497)	—
Payment of extinguishment costs	—	(37,701)	—
Proceeds from 2020 HPS Credit Facility and Warrants, net	—	—	388,000
Borrowings of long-term debt	114,920	747,500	16,807
Payments of issuance costs	(5,426)	(21,179)	(11,784)
Purchase of capped call transactions	—	(69,518)	—
Final payment of Align arbitration	—	(43,400)	—
Principal payments on long-term debt	—	(4,609)	(194,439)
Payments of finance leases	(6,447)	(11,055)	(10,138)
Other	462	1,173	663
Net cash provided by financing activities	103,448	155,717	178,975
Effect of exchange rates change on cash flow activities	260	505	—
Decrease in cash and restricted cash	(106,462)	(91,864)	(1,734)
Cash and restricted cash at beginning of period	224,860	316,724	318,458
Cash and restricted cash at end of period	$ 118,398	$ 224,860	$ 316,724

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

Note 1—Organization and Basis of Presentation

Organization

SmileDirectClub, Inc. was formed on April 11, 2019 with no operating assets or operations as a Delaware corporation for the purpose of facilitating an initial public offering and other related transactions in order to carry on the business of SDC Financial LLC and its subsidiaries. Unless otherwise indicated or the context otherwise requires, references to "we," "us," "our," the "Company," "SmileDirectClub," and similar references refer to SmileDirectClub, Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries, including SDC Financial LLC and its subsidiaries. "SDC Financial" refers to SDC Financial LLC and "SDC Inc." refers to SmileDirectClub, Inc. The Company is engaged by its network of doctors to provide a suite of non-clinical administrative support services, including access to and use of its SmileCheck platform, as a Dental Support Organization. For purposes of these Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements, the Company's affiliated network of dentists and orthodontists is included in the definition of "we," "us," "our," and the "Company" as it relates to any clinical aspect of the member's treatment. All of the Company's manufacturing operations are directly or indirectly conducted by Access Dental Lab, LLC ("Access Dental"), one of its operating subsidiaries.

SmileDirectClub is an oral care company and creator of the first MedTech platform for teeth straightening. Through the Company's cutting-edge teledentistry technology and vertically integrated model, it is revolutionizing the oral care industry, from clear aligner therapy to its affordable, premium oral care product line. SmileDirectClub's mission is to democratize access to a smile each and every person loves by making it affordable and convenient for everyone. SmileDirectClub is headquartered in Nashville, Tennessee and operates in the U.S., Costa Rica, Puerto Rico, Canada, Australia, United Kingdom, France, and Ireland.

SDC Inc. is a holding company. Its sole material asset is its equity interest in SDC Financial which, through its direct and indirect subsidiaries, conducts all of the Company's operations. SDC Financial is a Delaware limited liability company and wholly owns SmileDirectClub, LLC ("SDC LLC") (a Tennessee limited liability company) and Access Dental Labs (a Tennessee limited liability company). Because SDC Inc. is the managing member of SDC Financial, SDC Inc. indirectly operates and controls all of the business and affairs of SDC Financial and its subsidiaries.

Initial Public Offering

On September 16, 2019, SDC Inc. completed an initial public offering ("IPO") of 58,537,000 shares of its Class A common stock at a public offering price of $23.00 per share. SDC Inc. received $1,286 million in proceeds, net of underwriting discounts and commissions. SDC Inc. used substantially all of the net proceeds after expenses to purchase newly-issued membership interest units from SDC Financial.

Reorganization Transactions

In connection with the IPO, the Company completed the following transactions (the "Reorganization Transactions"):

- the formation of SDC Inc. as a Delaware corporation to function as the ultimate parent of SmileDirectClub and a publicly traded entity;

- SDC Inc.'s acquisition of the pre-IPO membership interest units in SDC Financial ("Pre-IPO Units") held by certain pre-IPO investors that are taxable as corporations for U.S. federal income tax purposes ("Blockers"), pursuant to a series of mergers (the "Blocker Mergers") of the Blockers with wholly owned subsidiaries of SDC Inc., and the issuance by SDC Inc. to the equityholders of the Blockers shares of Class A common stock as consideration in the Blocker Mergers;

- the amendment and restatement of the SDC Financial's limited liability company operating agreement (the "SDC Financial LLC Agreement") to, among other things, modify the capital structure of SDC Financial by replacing the

different classes of Pre-IPO Units (including restricted Pre-IPO Units held by certain employees) with a single new class of membership interests of SDC Financial ("LLC Units");

- the issuance to each of the pre-IPO investors previously holding Pre-IPO Units (including restricted Pre-IPO Units) of a number of shares of SDC Inc. Class B common stock equal to the number of LLC Units held by it;

- the issuance to certain employees of cash and shares of Class A common stock pursuant to their Incentive Bonus Agreements ("IBAs"); and

- the equitable adjustment, pursuant to their terms, of outstanding warrants to purchase Pre-IPO Units held by two service providers into warrants to acquire LLC Units (together with an equal number of shares of SDC Inc.'s Class B common stock).

Following the completion of the Reorganization Transactions and the IPO, SDC Inc. owned 26.9% of SDC Financial. Holders (other than SDC Inc.) of LLC Units following the consummation of the Reorganization Transactions and the IPO ("Continuing LLC Members") owned the remaining 73.1% of SDC Financial.

SDC Inc. is the sole managing member of SDC Financial and, although SDC Inc. has a minority economic interest in SDC Financial, it has the sole voting power in, and controls the management of, SDC Financial. Accordingly, SDC Inc. consolidates the financial results of SDC Financial and reports a noncontrolling interest in its consolidated financial statements. As the Reorganization Transactions are considered transactions between entities under common control, the financial statements for periods prior to the IPO and Reorganization Transactions have been adjusted to combine the previously separate entities for presentation purposes.

In connection with the Reorganization Transactions and the IPO, the Company entered into a Tax Receivable Agreement (the "Tax Receivable Agreement") with the Continuing LLC Members, pursuant to which SDC Inc. agreed to pay the Continuing LLC Members 85% of the amount of cash tax savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state, and local income tax or franchise tax that SDC Inc. actually realizes as a result of (a) the increases in tax basis attributable to exchanges of LLC Units by Continuing LLC Members and (b) tax benefits related to imputed interest deemed to be paid by SDC Inc. as a result of the Tax Receivable Agreement.

Basis of Presentation and Consolidation

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of SDC Inc., which consolidates SDC Financial and its wholly-owned subsidiaries, as well as accounts of contractually affiliated professional corporations ("PCs") managed by the Company.

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of variable interest entities in which the Company is the primary beneficiary under the provisions of Accounting Standards Codification (''ASC") Topic 810, "*Consolidation.*" At December 31, 2022, the variable interest entities include 58 dentist owned PCs, and at December 31, 2021 the variable interest entities included 53 dentist owned PCs. The Company is a dental service organization and does not engage in the practice of dentistry. All clinical services are provided by dentists and orthodontists who are engaged as independent contractors or otherwise engaged by the dentist-owned PCs. The Company contracts with the PCs and dentists and orthodontists through a suite of agreements, including but not limited to, management services agreements, supply agreements, and licensing agreements, pursuant to which the Company provides the administrative, non-clinical management services to the PCs and independent contractors. The Company has the contractual right to manage the activities that most significantly impact the variable interest entities' economic performance through these agreements without engaging in the corporate practice of dentistry. Additionally, the Company would absorb substantially all of the expected losses of these

entities should they occur. The accompanying consolidated statements of operations reflect the revenue earned and the expenses incurred by the PCs.

COVID-19 Pandemic and Restructuring of Operations

Although increasing rates of vaccinations across the globe and decreasing governmental restrictions have begun to lessen the impact of COVID-19, the Company continues to navigate the uncertain and unprecedented economic and operating conditions resulting from COVID-19 and its protracted duration.

Beginning in the second quarter of 2020, the Company performed a review of its real estate needs and initiated restructuring actions related to a real estate repositioning program that remains ongoing. As a result of these actions, the Company incurred one-time charges of approximately $5,279 during the year ended December 31, 2021, primarily associated with the closure and consolidation of many of our SmileShops, which is an on-going evaluation.

During the year ended December 31, 2022, the Company incurred one-time charges of approximately $20,957, primarily associated with lease buyouts, asset impairments related to the closure of regional operating centers and SmileShops, and employee-related costs, including severance and retention payments, associated with the previously announced suspension of operations in Mexico, Spain, Germany, Netherlands, Austria, Hong Kong, Singapore and New Zealand. The Company will continue to operate in the United States, Canada, United Kingdom, Ireland, France and Australia, and will scale its presence in each, except France. With these changes, the Company implemented a reduction in workforce to right-size its operating structure so it is tailored to the countries in which the Company will continue to operate and focus. The Company continues to evaluate its SmileShops and other properties to determine if it will further rationalize its footprint to better align with marketplace demand, including the direct and indirect effects of the COVID-19 pandemic. Additional future restructuring charges may result from the Company's real estate repositioning and optimization initiatives.

Note 2—Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Management Use of Estimates

The preparation of the consolidated financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that impact the reported amounts. On an ongoing basis, the Company evaluates its estimates, including those related to the fair values of financial instruments, useful lives of property, plant and equipment, revenue recognition, equity-based compensation, long-lived assets, and contingent liabilities, among others. In connection with its 2020 credit facility with HPS Investment Partners, the Company issued warrants to certain affiliates of HPS Investment Partners. The warrants were recorded at fair value at the time of issuance within equity on the consolidated balance sheet using the Black-Scholes option pricing model (see Note 10). Each of these estimates varies in regard to the level of judgment involved and its potential impact on the Company's financial results. Estimates are considered critical either when a different estimate could have reasonably been used, or where changes in the estimate are reasonably likely to occur from period to period, and such use or change would materially impact the Company's financial condition, results of operations, or cash flows. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Revenue Recognition

The Company's revenues are derived primarily from sales of aligners, impression kits, whitening gel, and retainers, and interest earned through its SmilePay financing program. Revenue is recorded for all customers based on the amount that is expected to be collected, which considers implicit price concessions, discounts, and cancellations and refunds from customer returns.

The Company identifies a performance obligation as distinct if both of the following criteria are met: the customer can benefit from the good or service either on its own or together with other resources that are readily available to the customer and the entity's promise to transfer the good or service to the customer is separately identifiable from other promises in the contract. Determining the standalone selling price ("SSP") and allocation of consideration from a contract to the individual performance obligations, and the appropriate timing of revenue recognition, is the result of significant qualitative and quantitative judgments. Management considers a variety of factors such as historical sales, usage rates (the number of times a customer is expected to order additional aligners), costs, and expected margin, which may vary over time depending upon the unique facts and circumstances related to each performance obligation, in making these estimates. Further, the Company's process for estimating usage rates requires judgment and evaluation of inputs, including historical data and forecasted usages. Changes in the allocation of the SSP between performance obligations will not affect the amount of total revenues recognized for a particular contract. The Company uses the expected cost plus a margin approach to determine the SSP for performance obligations, and discounts are allocated to each performance obligation based on the relative SSP. However, any material changes in the allocation of the SSP could impact the timing of revenue recognition, which may have a material effect on the Company's financial position and result of operations as the contract consideration is allocated to each performance obligation, delivered or undelivered, at the inception of the contract based on the SSP of each distinct performance obligation.

The Company estimates the amount expected to be collected based upon management's assessment of historical write-offs, expected net collections including implicit price concessions, and cancellations and refunds from customer returns, business and economic conditions, and other collection indicators. Management relies on the results of detailed reviews of historical write-offs, cancellations, returns, and collections as a primary source of information in estimating the amount of contract consideration expected to be collected. Uncollectible receivables are written-off in the period management believes it has exhausted its ability to collect payment from the customer. The Company believes its analysis provides reasonable estimates of its revenues and valuations of its accounts receivable.

A description of the revenue recognition for each product sold by the Company is detailed below.

Aligners and Impression Kits: The Company enters into contracts with customers for aligner sales that involve multiple future performance obligations. The Company determined that aligner sales comprise the following distinct performance obligations: initial aligners, touch-up aligners, and retainers for international sales only which can occur at any time

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

throughout the treatment plan (which is typically between five months to ten months) upon the direction of and prescription from the treating dentist or orthodontist.

The Company allocates revenues for each performance obligation based on its SSP and recognizes the revenues as control of the performance obligation is transferred upon shipment of the aligners. The Company recognizes aligner revenue on amounts expected to be collected during the course of the treatment plan.

The Company bills its customers either upfront for the full cost of aligners or monthly through its SmilePay financing program, which involves a down payment and a fixed amount per month for up to 26 months. The Company's accounts receivable related to the SmilePay financing program are reported at the amount expected to be collected on the consolidated balance sheets, which considers implicit price concessions. Financing revenue from its accounts receivable is recognized based on the contractual market interest rate with the customer, net of implicit price concessions. There are no fees or origination costs included in accounts receivable.

The Company sells doctor-prescribed impression kits to its customers as an alternative to an in-person visit at one of its SmileShops, popup locations, or Partner Network locations, comprised of affiliated dentist and orthodontist offices, where the customer receives a free oral digital imaging of their teeth. The Company combines the sales of its impression kits with aligner sales and recognizes the revenues as control of the performance obligation is transferred upon shipment of the aligners. The Company estimates the amount of impression kit sales that do not result in an aligner therapy treatment plan and recognizes such revenue when aligner conversion becomes remote.

Retainers and Other Products: The Company sells retainers and other products (such as whitening gel and tooth brushes) to customers, which can be purchased on the Company's website or certain retail outlets. The sales of these products are independent and separate from the customer's decision to purchase aligner therapy for domestic sales. The Company determined that the transfer of control for these performance obligations occurs as the title of such products passes to the customer or retail partner.

The following table summarizes revenue recognized for each product sold by the Company:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	**2021**	**2020**
Aligner revenue, net	$ 360,827	$ 517,552	$ 543,136
Financing revenue, net	33,778	42,919	49,407
Retainers and other products revenue	76,138	77,140	64,237
Total revenue	$ 470,743	$ 637,611	$ 656,780
Implicit price concessions, cancellations, and refunds included in total revenue	$ 94,648	$ 129,307	$ 138,841

Deferred Revenue: Deferred revenue represents the Company's contract liability for performance obligations associated with sales of aligners. During the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021, and 2020, the Company recognized $470,743, $637,611, and $656,780 of revenue, respectively, of which $14,949, $22,550 and $19,750 was previously included in deferred revenue on the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 2021, 2020 and 2019, respectively.

Allowance for credit losses and other revenue adjustments: The Company records a provision to maintain an allowance for credit losses and other revenue adjustments that result from the failure or inability of its members or other partners to make required payments deemed collectible when the product was delivered, or customer returns resulting in cancellations or refunds. When determining the allowances for member receivables, the Company considers the probability of recoverability of accounts receivable based on past experience, taking into account current collection trends and general economic factors. The Company also considers future economic trends in its estimation of expected credit losses over the lifetime of the asset. Credit risks are assessed based on historical write-offs, cancellations, and adjustments, net of recoveries, as well as an

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

analysis of the aged accounts receivable balances. Accounts receivable may be fully reserved for when specific collection issues are known to exist, such as a history of missed scheduled payments and customer service or production issues.

Activity in the allowance for credit losses and other revenue adjustments for the year ended December 31, 2022 was as follows:

	Allowance for Credit Losses
Balance at December 31, 2021	$ 49,309
Current period provision for expected credit losses and other revenue adjustments	94,648
Write-offs and other adjustments charged against the allowance, net of recoveries	(96,197)
Refunds paid	(10,974)
Balance at December 31, 2022	$ 36,786

As of December 31, 2022 and 2021, $32,562 and $43,097 related to implicit price concessions and cancellation and adjustment reserves and is included in net receivables, respectively, and $4,224 and $6,212 related to refund reserves and is included in current liabilities in the accompanying consolidated balance sheets, respectively.

Shipping and Handling Costs

Shipping and handling charges are recorded in cost of revenues in the consolidated statements of operations upon shipment. The Company incurred $18,182, $22,892 and $23,036 in outsourced shipping expenses for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, respectively.

Cost of Revenues

Cost of revenues includes the total cost of products produced and sold. Such costs include direct materials, direct labor, overhead costs (occupancy costs, indirect labor, and depreciation), fees retained by doctors, freight and duty expenses associated with moving materials from vendors to the Company's facilities and from its facilities to the customers, and adjustments for shrinkage (physical inventory losses), lower of cost or net realizable value, slow moving product and excess inventory quantities.

Marketing and Selling Expenses

Marketing and selling expenses include direct online and offline marketing and advertising costs, costs associated with intraoral imaging services, selling labor, and occupancy costs of SmileShop locations. All marketing and selling expenses, including advertising, are expensed as incurred. For the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, the Company incurred marketing, selling, and advertising costs of $290,231, $388,450 and $322,919, respectively.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses include payroll and benefit costs for corporate team members, equity-based compensation expenses, occupancy costs of corporate facilities, bank charges and costs associated with credit and debit card interchange fees, outside service fees, and other administrative costs, such as computer maintenance, supplies, travel, and lodging.

Depreciation and Amortization

Depreciation includes expenses related to the Company's property, plant and equipment, including finance leases. Amortization includes expenses related to definite-lived intangible assets and capitalized software. Depreciation and amortization is calculated using the straight-line method over the useful lives of the related assets, ranging from three to ten

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

years. Leasehold improvements are amortized using the straight-line method over the shorter of the related lease terms or their useful lives. Depreciation and amortization is included in cost of revenues, marketing and selling expenses, and general and administrative expenses depending on the purpose of the related asset.

Depreciation and amortization by financial statement line item were as follows:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
Cost of revenues	$ 22,389	$ 27,467	$ 24,718
Marketing and selling expenses	2,785	5,001	7,079
General and administrative expenses	49,221	37,645	24,593
Total	$ 74,395	$ 70,113	$ 56,390

Fair Value of Financial Instruments

The Company measures the fair value of financial instruments as the price that would be received from selling an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. Fair value is estimated by applying the following hierarchy, which prioritizes the inputs used to measure fair value into three levels and bases the categorization within the hierarchy upon the lowest level of input that is available and significant to the fair value measurement:

Level 1 — Quoted (unadjusted) prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

Level 2 — Observable inputs other than quoted prices included in Level 1, such as quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities in active markets; quoted prices for identical or similar assets or liabilities in markets that are not active; or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the asset or liability.

Level 3 — Inputs that are generally unobservable and typically reflect management's estimate of assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability.

The Company's financial instruments consist of cash, current and non-current receivables, accounts payable, debt instruments, and derivative financial instruments. Due to their short-term nature, the carrying values of cash, current receivables, and trade payables approximate current fair value at each balance sheet date. The Company had $873,888 and $747,500 in borrowings under its debt facilities (as discussed in Note 10) as of December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively. The fair value of the Company's debt facilities is based upon market quotes and trades by investors in partial interests of these instruments (Level 2). As of December 31, 2022, the fair value of the 2026 Convertible Senior Notes was approximately $77,553 compared to its carrying value of $734,155. The Company entered into a 2022 HPS Credit Facility on April 27, 2022. Based on market interest rates (Level 2 inputs), the carrying value of the borrowings for the 2022 HPS Credit Facility approximates fair value for each period reported.

Certain Risks and Uncertainties

The Company's operating results depend to a significant extent on the ability to market and develop its products. The life cycles of the Company's products are difficult to estimate due, in part, to the effect of future product enhancements and competition. The inability to successfully develop and market the Company's products as a result of competition or other factors would have a material adverse effect on its business, financial condition, and results of operations.

The Company provides credit to customers in the normal course of business. The Company maintains reserves for potential credit losses and such losses have been within management's expectations. No individual customer accounted for 1% or more of the Company's accounts receivable at December 31, 2022 or 2021, or net revenue for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020.

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

Some of the Company's products are considered medical devices and are subject to extensive regulation in the U.S. and internationally. The regulations to which the Company is subject are complex. Regulatory changes could result in restrictions on the Company's ability to carry on or expand its operations, higher than anticipated costs or lower than anticipated sales. The failure to comply with applicable regulatory requirements may have a material adverse impact on the Company.

The Company's reliance on international operations exposes it to related risks and uncertainties, including difficulties in staffing and managing international operations, such as hiring and retaining qualified personnel; political, social and economic instability; interruptions and limitations in telecommunication services; product and material transportation delays or disruption; trade restrictions and changes in tariffs; import and export license requirements and restrictions; fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates; and potential adverse tax consequences. If any of these risks materialize, operating results may be harmed.

The Company purchases certain inventory from sole suppliers, and the inability of any supplier or manufacturer to fulfill the supply requirements could materially and adversely impact its future operating results.

We obtain and process a large amount of sensitive data. Our systems and networks may be subject to cybersecurity breaches and other disruptions that could compromise our information. On May 3, 2021, the Company announced that it experienced a systems outage that was caused by a cybersecurity incident on April 14, 2021 (the "Incident"). During 2022, we received $8.0 million in insurance proceeds as final settlement related to reimbursement of expenses and business interruption as result of the Incident, which is included in Other expense (income) on the consolidated statement of operations.

Cash

Cash consists of all highly liquid investments with original maturities of less than three months. Cash is held in various financial institutions in the U.S. and internationally.

Restricted cash

Restricted cash primarily consists of cash restricted in connection with the 2022 HPS Credit Facility for the Company's capital structure. Restricted cash is included under non-current assets for debt that will expire in more than one year from the balance sheet date.

Reconciliation of cash and restricted cash were as follows:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2022	**2021**
Cash	$ 93,120	$ 224,860
Restricted cash	25,278	—
Total cash and restricted cash	$ 118,398	$ 224,860

Inventories

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost or net realizable value using the first-in, first-out method of inventory accounting. Inventory consists of raw materials for producing impression kits and aligners and finished goods. Inventory is net of shrinkage and obsolescence.

Property, Plant and Equipment, Net

Property, plant and equipment are stated at cost less accumulated depreciation and amortization and impairment charges. Routine maintenance and repairs are charged to expense as incurred. At the time property, plant and equipment are retired from service, the cost and accumulated depreciation or amortization are removed from the respective accounts and the related gains or losses are reflected in the consolidated statements of operations.

Leases

The Company categorizes leases at their inception as either operating or finance leases. Lease agreements cover certain retail locations, office space, warehouse, manufacturing and distribution space and equipment. Operating leases are included in operating lease right-of-use assets, other current liabilities, and long-term operating lease liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets. Finance leases are included in property, plant and equipment, net, current portion of long-term debt, and long-term debt.

Leased assets represent the Company's right to use an underlying asset for the lease term, and lease liabilities represent the Company's obligation to make lease payments arising from the lease. Operating lease right-of-use assets and liabilities are recognized at commencement date based on the present value of lease payments over the lease term. The Company uses a secured incremental borrowing rate as the discount rate for determining the present value of lease payments when the rate implicit in the contract is not readily determinable. Leases that have a term of twelve months or less upon commencement date are considered short-term in nature. Accordingly, short-term leases are not included on the consolidated balance sheets and are expensed on a straight-line basis over the lease term, which commences on the date we have the right to control the property.

Internally Developed Software Costs

The Company generally provides services to its customers using software developed for internal use. The costs that are incurred to develop such software are expensed as incurred during the preliminary project stage. Once certain criteria have been met, direct costs incurred in developing or obtaining computer software are capitalized. Training and maintenance costs are expensed as incurred. Capitalized software costs are included in property, plant and equipment in the consolidated balance sheets and are amortized over useful life of the software which is generally a three-year to five-year period. During the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021, and 2020, the Company capitalized $20,264, $58,558 and $21,509, respectively, of internally developed software costs. Amortization expense for internally developed software was $27,791, $17,973 and $7,978 for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021, and 2020, respectively.

Impairment

The Company evaluates long-lived assets for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset group may not be recoverable. An asset or asset group is considered impaired if its carrying amount exceeds the future undiscounted net cash flows that the asset or asset group is expected to generate. Factors the Company considers important which could trigger an impairment review include significant negative industry or economic trends, significant loss of customers and changes in the competitive environment. If an asset or asset group is considered to be impaired, the impairment to be recognized is calculated as the amount by which the carrying amount of the asset or asset group exceeds its fair market value. The Company's estimates of future cash flows attributable to long-lived assets require significant judgment based on its historical and anticipated results and are subject to many assumptions. The estimation of fair value utilizing a discounted cash flow approach includes numerous uncertainties which require significant judgment when making assumptions of expected growth rates and the selection of discount rates, as well as assumptions regarding general economic and business conditions, and the structure that would yield the highest economic value, among other factors.

Debt Issuance Costs

The Company records debt issuance costs related to its term debt as direct deductions from the carrying amount of the debt. The costs are amortized to interest expense over the life of the debt using the effective interest method.

Income Taxes

SDC Inc. is the managing member of SDC Financial and, as a result, consolidates the financial results of SDC Financial in the consolidated financial statements. SDC Financial and its subsidiaries are limited liability companies and have elected to be taxed as partnerships for income tax purposes except for a subsidiary, SDC Holding, LLC (‘‘SDC Holding”) and its domestic and foreign subsidiaries, which are taxed as corporations. As such, SDC Financial does not pay any federal income taxes, as any income or loss is included in the tax returns of the individual members. SDC Financial does pay state income tax in certain jurisdictions, and the Company’s income tax provision in the consolidated financial statements reflects the income taxes for those states. Additionally, certain wholly-owned entities taxed as corporations are subject to federal, state, and foreign income taxes, in the jurisdictions in which they operate, and accruals for such taxes are included in the consolidated financial statements. The Company further evaluates deferred tax assets in each jurisdiction and recognizes associated benefits when positive evidence of realization exceeds negative evidence, and otherwise records valuation allowances as necessary.

The Company computes the provision for income taxes using the liability method and recognizes deferred tax assets and liabilities for temporary differences between financial statement and income tax bases of assets and liabilities, as well as for operating loss and tax credit carryforwards. The Company measures deferred tax assets and liabilities using tax rates applicable to taxable income in effect for the years in which those tax assets are expected to be realized or settled and provides a valuation allowance against deferred tax assets when it cannot conclude that it is more likely than not that some or all deferred tax assets will be realized. In addition, the Company recognizes tax benefits from uncertain tax positions only if it expects that its tax positions are more likely than not that they will be sustained, based on the technical merits of the positions, on examination by the jurisdictional tax authority. The Company recognizes any accrued interest and penalties to unrecognized tax benefits as interest expense and income tax expense, respectively.

Tax Receivable Agreement

In connection with the Reorganization Transactions and the IPO, the Company entered into a Tax Receivable Agreement with the Continuing LLC Members, pursuant to which SDC Inc. agreed to pay the Continuing LLC Members 85% of the amount of cash tax savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state, and local income tax or franchise tax that SDC Inc. actually realizes as a result of (a) the increases in tax basis attributable to exchanges by Continuing LLC Members and (b) tax benefits related to imputed interest deemed to be paid by SDC Inc. as a result of the Tax Receivable Agreement. During the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, the Company recognized no liabilities relating to its obligations under the Tax Receivable Agreement, after concluding that it was not probable that the Company would have sufficient future taxable income over the term of the Tax Receivable Agreement to utilize the related tax benefits. There were no transactions subject to the Tax Receivable Agreement for which the Company recognized the related liability, as the Company concluded that it would not have sufficient future taxable income to utilize all of the related tax benefits.

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

Note 3—Inventories

Inventories are comprised of the following:

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Raw materials	$ 16,763	$ 14,662
Finished goods	27,624	26,141
Total inventories	$ 44,387	$ 40,803

Note 4—Prepaid and Other Assets

Prepaid and other assets are comprised of the following:

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Prepaid expenses	$ 9,338	$ 11,496
Deposits to vendors	5,487	5,443
Other	2,005	580
Total prepaid and other current assets	$ 16,830	$ 17,519
Prepaid expenses, non-current	$ 1,127	$ 1,911
Deposits to vendors, non-current	727	967
Indefinite-lived intangible assets	7,971	7,155
Other intangible assets, net	2,486	2,458
Investments and other	5,659	2,989
Total other assets	$ 17,970	$ 15,480

In March 2019, the Company purchased an intangible asset related to manufacturing. The Company evaluates the carrying value of this indefinite-lived intangible asset at least annually or when events and circumstances warrant such a review, to determine whether significant events or changes in circumstances indicate that an impairment in value may have occurred. There were no impairment charges related to the Company's indefinite-lived intangible assets during the years ended December 31, 2022 or 2021.

Note 5—Lease Abandonment, Impairment of Long-lived Assets, Restructuring and Other Related Charges

The Company implemented changes during the year ended December 31, 2022 resulting in one-time restructuring related charges of $20,957. These charges were primarily associated with lease buyouts, asset impairments related to the closure of regional operating centers and SmileShops, and employee-related costs, including severance and retention payments, associated with the previously announced suspension of operations in Mexico, Spain, Germany, Netherlands, Austria, Hong Kong, Singapore and New Zealand. Incentive retention payments will generally vest over a 12 month period ending March 2023 and were provided to certain team members as a result of the restructuring. The Company will continue to operate in the United States, Canada, United Kingdom, Ireland, France and Australia, and will scale its presence in each, except France. With these changes, the Company implemented a reduction in workforce to right-size its operating structure so it is tailored to the countries in which the Company will continue to operate and focus. The Company continues to evaluate its SmileShops and other properties to determine if it will further rationalize its footprint to better align with marketplace demand, including the direct and indirect effects of the COVID-19 pandemic. Additional future restructuring charges may result from the Company's real estate repositioning and optimization initiatives.

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

The following table summarizes lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived assets and restructuring and other related charges for the periods presented:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
Lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived assets:			
Impairment of property, plant and equipment	$ 1,289	$ 586	$ 21,628
Impairment of operating lease right of use assets	—	895	3,829
	$ 1,289	$ 1,481	$ 25,457
Restructuring and other related charges:			
Impairment of inventory	$ 643	$ 219	$ 786
Short-term lease termination fees	269	205	4,687
Other expenses including personnel related costs such as severance and retention	18,756	3,374	1,561
	$ 19,668	$ 3,798	$ 7,034

The balance of the unpaid accruals for the restructuring programs recorded in the consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 2022 was $221 in accrued liabilities. The balance of paid unrecognized retention expense for the restructuring programs recorded in the consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 2022 was $1,368 in prepaid expenses and other current assets.

Note 6—Property, Plant and Equipment, Net

Property, plant and equipment were comprised of the following:

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Lab and SmileShop equipment	$ 96,034	$ 118,320
Computer equipment and software	230,481	178,508
Leasehold improvements	33,831	36,474
Furniture and fixtures	13,800	13,321
Vehicles	6,882	8,018
Construction in progress	8,577	23,182
	389,605	377,823
Less: accumulated depreciation	(199,518)	(150,622)
Property, plant and equipment, net	$ 190,087	$ 227,201

The carrying values of assets under finance leases were $0 and $10,163 as of December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively, net of accumulated depreciation of $0 and $18,013, respectively.

Note 7—Leases

The Company leases property and equipment under finance and operating leases. For leases with terms greater than 12 months, the Company records the related right-of-use assets and right-of-use obligations at the present value of lease payments over the term. Certain of the Company's leases include rental escalation clauses and renewal options that are

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

factored into the determination of lease payments when appropriate. Certain of the Company's leased store locations have variable payments based upon scan volume as well as other variable property related costs. The Company does not separate lease and non-lease components of contracts.

Generally, the Company uses its estimated incremental borrowing rate to discount the lease payments based on information available at lease commencement, as most of its leases do not provide a readily determinable implicit interest rate. The Company estimates its collateralized incremental borrowing rate based upon a synthetic credit rating and yield curve analysis at commencement or modification date in determining the present value of lease payments. All finance lease arrangements ended during the fourth quarter of 2022.

The following table presents lease-related assets and liabilities:

Leases Assets and Liabilities	Balance Sheet Classification	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Assets:			
Operating leases	Operating lease right-of-use assets	$ 21,141	$ 24,927
Finance leases	Property, plant, and equipment, net	—	10,163
		$ 21,141	$ 35,090
Liabilities:			
Operating leases	Other current liabilities	$ 6,336	$ 4,997
Finance leases	Current portion of long-term debt	—	10,997
Operating leases	Operating lease liabilities, net of current portion	16,082	20,352
		$ 22,418	$ 36,346
Weighted average remaining term:			
Operating leases		4.1 years	4.8 years
Finance leases		—	0.8 years
Weighted average discount rate:			
Operating leases[(1)]		4.99 %	4.94 %
Finance leases		— %	7.00 %

[(1)] Upon adoption of the new lease standard, discount rates used for existing leases were established at January 1, 2020.

The following table presents certain information related to lease expense for finance and operating leases:

Expense Category	Statement of Operations Classification	Years Ended December 31, 2022	2021	2020
Finance lease expense:				
Amortization of leased assets	Cost of revenues	$ 5,599	$ 9,208	$ 9,988
Interest on lease liabilities	Interest expense	413	1,265	2,062
Operating leases[(3)]		7,121	8,607	9,875
Short-term lease expense[(3)]		9,911	12,290	16,452
Variable lease expense[(3)]		475	728	3,249
Total lease expense		$ 23,519	$ 32,098	$ 41,626

[(3)] Expenses are included in "Cost of revenues", "Marketing and selling expenses", or "General and administrative expenses" in our consolidated statements of operations, depending on the purpose of the related asset.

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

Other Information

The following table represents supplemental cash flow information:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2022	2021
Cash paid for amounts used in the measurement of lease liabilities:		
Cash used in operating activities	$ 6,799	$ 8,265
Cash used in investing activities	$ —	$ —
Cash used in financing activities	$ 6,447	$ 11,055

Maturities of Lease Liabilities

The following table reconciles the undiscounted cash flows to the operating lease liabilities recorded on the consolidated balance sheet at December 31, 2022:

	Operating Leases
2023	$ 7,309
2024	5,654
2025	4,295
2026	3,794
2027	3,467
2028 and thereafter	461
Total minimum lease payments	24,980
Amount representing interest	(2,562)
Present value of future minimum lease payments	22,418
Less: current portion	(6,336)
Long-term lease liabilities	$ 16,082

Note 8—Accrued Liabilities

Accrued liabilities were comprised of the following:

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Accrued marketing and selling costs	$ 16,116	$ 37,883
Accrued payroll and payroll related expenses	11,214	15,829
Accrued sales tax and related costs	7,178	8,769
Other	31,429	59,585
Total accrued liabilities	$ 65,937	$ 122,066

Note 9—Income Taxes

SDC Inc. is the managing member of SDC Financial and, as a result, consolidates the financial results of SDC Financial. SDC Financial and its subsidiaries are limited liability companies and have elected to be taxed as partnerships for income tax purposes except for a subsidiary, SDC Holding and certain of its domestic and foreign subsidiaries, which are taxed as corporations. The Company files income tax returns in the U.S. federal, various states and foreign jurisdictions. Any taxable

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

income or loss generated by SDC Financial is passed through to and included in the taxable income or loss of its members, including SDC Inc., generally on a pro rata basis or otherwise under the terms of the SDC Financial LLC Agreement. The Company is subject to U.S. federal income taxes, in addition to state and local income taxes with respect to its allocable share of any taxable income or loss of SDC Financial, as well as any stand-alone income or loss generated by SDC Inc.

The Company recorded an income tax expense (benefit) of $(642) for the year ended December 31, 2022 compared to an income tax expense of $1,268 during the year ended December 31, 2021. The Company's income tax expense may vary from the expense that would be expected based on statutory rates due principally to its organizational structure and recognition of valuation allowances against deferred tax assets.

Income Tax Expense (Benefit)

The components of loss before income taxes were as follows:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	**2021**	**2020**
Domestic	$ (265,403)	$ (320,870)	$ (269,211)
Foreign	(13,092)	(13,512)	(6,166)
Loss before income taxes	$ (278,495)	$ (334,382)	$ (275,377)

The income tax provision (benefit) was as follows:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	**2021**	**2020**
Current:			
Federal	$ 441	$ 258	$ 1,169
State	379	359	642
Foreign	(1,113)	(12)	1253
Current income tax provision (benefit)	$ (293)	$ 605	$ 3,064
Deferred:			
Federal	$ —	$ —	$ —
State	(485)	80	58
Foreign	136	583	—
Deferred income tax provision (benefit)	$ (349)	$ 663	$ 58
Total income tax provision (benefit)	$ (642)	$ 1,268	$ 3,122

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

The reconciliation of the statutory U.S. federal income tax rate to our effective income tax rate is as follows:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	**2021**	**2020**
U.S. federal income tax statutory rate	21.0 %	21.0 %	21.0 %
Income attributable to noncontrolling interest and non taxable income	(13.4)%	(13.0)%	(13.2)%
State income tax, net of federal benefit	0.1 %	(0.1)%	(0.1)%
Losses for which no benefit has been recognized	(9.7)%	(12.5)%	(0.4)%
Foreign rate differential	— %	0.2 %	(0.1)%
Uncertain tax position	(0.1)%	(0.1)%	(0.5)%
Change in investment in partnership	2.3 %	4.1 %	(7.8)%
Effective income tax rate	0.2 %	(0.4)%	(1.1)%

Deferred Tax Assets and Liabilities

Deferred income taxes reflect the net tax effects of tax carryovers and temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the balances for income tax purposes. Significant components of deferred tax assets and liabilities are as follows:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2022	**2021**
Deferred tax assets:		
Deferred revenue	$ 260	$ 369
Accruals and reserves	6,976	4,411
Net operating loss carryforwards	147,676	111,413
Basis in partnership	157,867	173,092
Gross deferred tax assets	312,779	289,285
Valuation allowance	(311,195)	(288,506)
Net deferred tax assets	$ 1,584	$ 779
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Depreciation and amortization	$ (1,587)	$ (814)
Other	(435)	(757)
Gross deferred tax liabilities	(2,022)	(1,571)
Net deferred tax liabilities	$ (438)	$ (792)

At December 31, 2022, the Company had unused federal net operating loss carryforwards (tax effected) for federal income tax purposes of $97,785, which can be carried forward indefinitely and may be used to offset future taxable income. In addition, the Company had unused net operating loss carryforwards (tax effected) for state income tax purposes of $42,801, which expire from 2029 through 2036. The Company also had unused net operating loss carryforwards (tax effected) for foreign income tax purposes of $7,090. Additionally, the Company has certain other deferred tax assets related to potential future tax benefits. All deferred tax assets are evaluated using positive and negative evidence as to their future realization. The Company considers recent historical losses to be significant negative evidence, and as such, records a valuation allowance against substantially all of its deferred tax assets.

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

As of December 31, 2022, the Company maintained a valuation allowance of approximately $311,195 against its deferred tax assets. If there is a change in the Company's assessment of the amount of deferred income tax assets that is realizable, adjustments to the valuation allowance will be made in future periods.

Unrecognized Tax Benefits

A reconciliation of the Company's gross unrecognized tax benefits is as follows:

	Years Ended December 31,	
	2022	**2021**
Balance at beginning of year	$ 2,928	$ 2,555
Increases for tax positions taken in prior years	—	—
Decreases for tax positions taken in prior years	—	—
Increases for tax positions taken in current year	421	438
Decreases for settlements with taxing authorities	—	—
Decreases for lapsing of the statute of limitations	(53)	(65)
Balance at end of year	$ 3,296	$ 2,928

The total amount of accrued interest and penalties were not significant as of December 31, 2022. The total amount of unrecognized tax benefit recorded during 2022 and 2021 was $3,296 and $2,928, respectively. All our unrecognized tax benefits, if recognized, would have a favorable impact on the effective tax rate.

Tax Receivable Agreement

The Company expects to obtain an increase in its share of the tax basis in the net assets of SDC Financial when LLC Units are redeemed from or exchanged by Continuing LLC Members. The Company intends to treat any redemptions and exchanges of LLC Units as direct purchases of LLC Units for U.S. federal income tax purposes. These increases in tax basis may reduce the amounts that it would otherwise pay in the future to various tax authorities. They may also decrease gains (or increase losses) on future dispositions of certain capital assets to the extent tax basis is allocated to those capital assets.

In connection with the Reorganization Transactions and the IPO, the Company entered into the Tax Receivable Agreement with the Continuing LLC Members. The Tax Receivable Agreement provides for the payment by SDC Inc. of 85% of the amount of any tax benefits that SDC Inc. actually realizes, or in some cases is deemed to realize, as a result of (i) increases in SDC Inc.'s share of the tax basis in the net assets of SDC Financial resulting from any redemptions or exchanges of LLC Units, (ii) tax basis increases attributable to payments made under the Tax Receivable Agreement, and (iii) deductions attributable to imputed interest pursuant to the Tax Receivable Agreement (collectively, the "TRA Payments"). The Company expects to benefit from the remaining 15% of any of cash savings, if any, that it realizes.

During the year ended December 31, 2022, the Company exchanged an aggregate of $1,001 in LLC Units in connection with the redemption of certain Continuing LLC Members, which resulted in an increase in the tax basis of the assets of SDC Financial subject to the provisions of the Tax Receivable Agreement. The Company has not recognized any additional liability under the Tax Receivable Agreement after concluding it was not probable that such TRA Payments would be paid based on its estimates of future taxable income. No payments were made to the Continuing LLC Members pursuant to the Tax Receivable Agreement during the years ended December 31, 2022 or 2021.

The amounts payable under the Tax Receivable Agreement will vary depending upon a number of factors, including the amount, character, and timing of the taxable income of SDC Inc. in the future. If the valuation allowance recorded against the deferred tax assets applicable to the tax attributes referenced above is released in a future period, the Tax Receivable Agreement liability may be considered probable at that time and recorded within earnings.

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

Note 10—Long-Term Debt

The Company's debt and finance lease obligations are comprised of the following:

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
2026 Convertible Senior Notes, net of unamortized financing costs of $13,345 and $17,527, respectively	$ 734,155	$ 729,973
2022 HPS Credit Facility, net of unamortized financing costs of $2,516	115,224	—
Finance lease obligations	—	10,997
Total debt	849,379	740,970
Less current portion	—	(10,997)
Total long-term debt	$ 849,379	$ 729,973

2026 Convertible Senior Notes

On February 9, 2021, the Company issued $650,000 principal amount of the Company's 0.00% Convertible Senior Notes due 2026 (the "Notes"). The Company also granted the initial purchasers of the Notes an option to purchase up to an additional $97,500 aggregate principal amount of the Notes ("Option Notes"). On February 9, 2021, the initial purchasers of the Notes exercised their option to purchase $70,000 aggregate principal amount of the Option Notes (the "First Greenshoe Exercise"). The sale of the Option Notes from the First Greenshoe Exercise closed on February 12, 2021. On February 11, 2021, the initial purchasers of the Notes exercised the remaining portion of their option to purchase $27,500 aggregate principal amount of the Option Notes (the "Second Greenshoe Exercise" and the Option Notes issued in connection with the Second Greenshoe Exercise, the "Second Greenshoe Option Notes"). The sale of the Second Greenshoe Option Notes closed on February 16, 2021.

The Notes were issued and governed by an indenture, dated February 9, 2021 (the "Indenture") between the Company and Wilmington Trust, National Association, as trustee. The Notes will mature on February 1, 2026, unless earlier repurchased, redeemed or converted. The Notes will not bear regular interest, and the principal amount of the Notes will not accrete.

The initial conversion rate for the Notes is 55.3710 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock per $1,000 principal amount of Notes, which is equivalent to an initial conversion price of approximately $18.06 per share of Class A Common Stock. The initial conversion price of the Notes represents a premium of approximately 40% over the last reported sale of $12.90 per share of the Company's Class A Common Stock on February 4, 2021. The conversion rate and conversion price will be subject to customary adjustments upon the occurrence of certain events in accordance with the terms of the Indenture.

The Company recorded $21,391 related to deferred financing costs of the Notes. During the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, the Company amortized deferred financing costs under the effective interest rate method of $4,267 and $3,811, respectively.

The Notes are the Company's senior, unsecured obligations and are (i) equal in right of payment with the Company's existing and future senior, unsecured indebtedness; (ii) senior in right of payment to the Company's existing and future indebtedness that is expressly subordinated to the Notes; (iii) effectively subordinated to the Company's existing and future secured indebtedness, to the extent of the value of the collateral securing that indebtedness; and (iv) structurally subordinated to all existing and future indebtedness and other liabilities, including the Company's trade payables, and (to the extent the Company is not a holder thereof) preferred equity, if any, of the Company's subsidiaries.

The Company may, at its option, redeem some of the Notes, in whole or in part, at the applicable redemption price as set forth in the Indenture.

If certain corporate events that constitute a "Fundamental Change" (as defined in the Indenture) occur, then noteholders may require the Company to repurchase their Notes at a cash repurchase price equal to the principal amount of the Notes to be repurchased, plus accrued and unpaid special interest, if any. The definition of Fundamental Change includes certain business combination transactions involving the Company and certain de-listing events with respect to the Company's Class A common stock.

The Notes have customary provisions relating to the occurrence of an "Event of Default" (as defined in the Indenture), which include the following: (i) a default by the Company in the payment when due (whether at maturity, upon redemption or repurchase upon fundamental change or otherwise) of the principal of, or the redemption price or fundamental change repurchase price for, any Note (ii) a default by the Company for 30 days in the payment when due of special interest, if any, on any Note; (iii) the Company's failure to send certain notices under the Indenture within specified periods of time; (iv) a default by the Company in its obligation to convert a Note in accordance with the Indenture upon the exercise of the conversion right with respect thereto, if such default is not cured within three business days after its occurrence; (v) the Company's failure to comply with certain covenants in the Indenture relating to the Company's ability to consolidate with or merge with or into, or sell, lease or otherwise transfer, in one transaction or a series of transactions, all or substantially all of the assets of the Company and its subsidiaries, taken as a whole, to another person; (vi) a default by the Company in its other obligations or agreements under the Indenture or the Notes (other than a default set forth in clauses (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) or (v) above) if such default is not cured or waived within 60 days after written notice is given in accordance with the Indenture; (vii) certain defaults by the Company or any of its significant subsidiaries with respect to indebtedness for borrowed money of at least $50,000; and (viii) certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency and reorganization involving the Company or any of the Company's significant subsidiaries.

If an Event of Default involving bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization events with respect to the Company (and not solely with respect to a significant subsidiary of the Company) occurs, then the principal amount of, and all accrued and unpaid special interest, if any, on all of the Notes then outstanding will immediately become due and payable without any further action or notice by any person. If any other Event of Default occurs and is continuing, then the Trustee, by notice to the Company, or noteholders of at least 25% of the aggregate principal amount of Notes then outstanding, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may declare the principal amount of, and all accrued and unpaid special interest, if any, on all of the Notes then outstanding to become due and payable immediately. However, notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may elect, at its option, that the sole remedy for an Event of Default relating to certain failures by the Company to comply with certain reporting covenants in the Indenture consists exclusively of the right of the noteholders to receive special interest on the Notes for up to 180 days at a specified rate per annum not exceeding 0.50% on the principal amount of the Notes.

The Company used approximately $69,518 of the net proceeds from the Notes to fund the cost of entering into the capped call transactions described below. The Company used a portion of the remainder of the net proceeds from the offering to repay amounts owed under the 2020 HPS Credit Facility.

On February 4, 2021, in connection with the pricing of the Notes, the Company entered into privately negotiated capped call transactions (the "Base Capped Call Transactions") with certain of the initial purchasers of the Notes and/or their respective affiliates and/or other financial institutions (the "Option Counterparties"). In addition, on February 9, 2021, in connection with First Greenshoe Exercise and on February 11, 2021, in connection with the Second Greenshoe Exercise, the Company entered into additional privately negotiated capped call transactions (collectively, and together with the Base Capped Call Transactions, the "Capped Call Transactions") with the Option Counterparties. The Capped Call Transactions cover, subject to anti-dilution adjustments substantially similar to those applicable to the Notes, the number of shares of Class A common stock initially underlying the Notes. The Capped Call Transactions are expected generally to reduce potential dilution to the Class A common stock upon any conversion of the Notes and/or offset any potential cash payments the Company is required to make in excess of the principal amount of such converted Notes, as the case may be, with such reduction and/or offset subject to a cap.

The Capped Call Transactions are separate transactions entered into by the Company with each Option Counterparty, and are not part of the terms of the Notes and will not affect any noteholder's rights under the Notes. Noteholders will not have any rights with respect to the Capped Call Transactions.

In connection with the issuance of the Notes, SmileDirectClub, Inc. entered into an intercompany convertible promissory note ("Intercompany Convertible Note") with SDC Financial, LLC, whereby SmileDirectClub, Inc. provided the net proceeds from the issuance of the Notes to SDC Financial, LLC. The terms of the Intercompany Convertible Note mirror the terms of the Notes issued by SmileDirectClub, Inc. The intent of the Intercompany Convertible Note is to maintain the parity of shares of Class A common stock with LLC Units as required by the SDC Financial LLC Agreement.

2020 HPS Credit Facility

In May 2020, SDC U.S. SmilePay SPV ("SPV"), a wholly-owned special purpose subsidiary of the Company, entered into a Loan Agreement among SPV, as borrower, SmileDirectClub, LLC, as the seller and servicer, certain lenders, and HPS Investment Partners, LLC, as administrative agent and collateral agent, providing a five-year secured term loan facility to SPV in an initial aggregate maximum principal amount of $400,000, net of original issue discount of $12,000 (the "2020 HPS Credit Facility"). On March 29, 2021, the 2020 HPS Credit Facility was paid in full and terminated. In connection with the repayment, the unamortized loan costs, the unaccreted warrant value, and the prepayment fee described above are recorded as a loss on extinguishment of debt in the accompanying consolidated statements of operations.

2022 HPS Credit Facility

On April 27, 2022, SPV entered into a Loan Agreement (the "2022 HPS Credit Facility") by and among SPV, as borrower, SmileDirectClub, LLC, as the seller and servicer, certain lenders, and HPS Investment Partners, LLC, as administrative agent and collateral agent, providing a 42-month secured delayed-draw term loan facility to SPV in an aggregate maximum principal amount of up to $255,000.

The Company recorded $5,426 of deferred financing costs on the 2022 HPS Credit Facility. Of the $5,426 deferred financing costs, $2,713 is associated with the unused loan commitment amount and is presented as "Other assets" in the accompanying consolidated balance sheets. The remaining costs of $2,713 are amortized over the term of the loan. During the year ended December 31, 2022, the Company amortized under the effective interest rate method $219 of deferred financing costs.

Outstanding loans under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility bear interest at a variable rate equal to (i) subject to a 1.00% per annum floor, three-month LIBOR plus 10.75% per annum, of which interest accrued at up to 3.75% per annum may be payable in kind, or (ii) subject to a 2.00% per annum floor, an interest rate equal to the greater of (a) the prime rate in effect from time to time and (b) the federal funds rate in effect from time to time plus 0.5%, plus in each case 9.75% per annum, of which, in each of the foregoing cases, interest accrued at up to 3.75% per annum may be payable in kind. In addition to paying interest on the outstanding principal balance, the Company is required to pay a lender's commitment fee of 2.75% per annum based on the unused facility amount. As required under the loan agreement, the total of $13,000 was deposited into the SDC Cash Reserve account on the closing date of the 2022 HPS Credit Facility. In December, 2022, we drew an additional $60,000 from 2022 HPS Credit Facility and deposited an additional $12,000 into the SDC Cash Reserve account..

Subject to certain exceptions, the 2022 HPS Credit Facility is secured by first-priority security interests in SPV's assets, which consist of certain receivables, cash, intellectual property and related assets. SPV's obligations under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility are guaranteed on a limited basis by SmileDirectClub, LLC and SDC Financial LLC (collectively, the "Guarantors"). The Guarantors guarantee (i) on a full recourse basis, up to 10% of SPV's outstanding obligations under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility plus enforcement costs, and (ii) certain losses incurred by the lenders as a result of fraud, misrepresentation, legal and regulation violations and certain other actions and omissions by SPV and/or certain of its affiliates. The Guarantors do not pledge their assets to secure any obligations of SPV under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility. As of December 31, 2022, the Company had $181,161 of its receivable collateralized as part of the 2022 HPS Credit Facility.

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

The 2022 HPS Credit Facility contains various restrictions, covenants, ratios and events of default, including:

- SPV has limitations on consolidations, creation of liens, incurring additional indebtedness, dispositions of assets, investments and paying dividends or other distributions.

- SDC Financial LLC, its consolidated subsidiaries and certain originator entities must maintain minimum monthly liquidity of $50,000 and are subject to additional leverage ratios upon the occurrence of additional debt.

If any event of default under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility occurs, then the collateral agent may declare any outstanding obligations under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility to be immediately due and payable. In addition, if SPV or certain of its affiliates become the subject of voluntary or involuntary proceedings under any bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law, then any outstanding obligations under the 2022 HPS Credit Facility will automatically become immediately due and payable.

As of December 31, 2022, the Company had $126,388 outstanding including the original discount of $10,200 and was in compliance with all covenants in the 2022 HPS Credit Facility. The permitted loan balance was $140,400 based on the underlying accounts receivable balances. Amounts drawn, up to $255,000 , but in excess of the permitted loan balance are required to be kept in the SDC U.S. SmilePay SPV and are restricted. The Company was in compliance with all covenants related to the 2022 HPS Credit Facility as of December 31, 2022.

HPS Warrants

In connection with the 2020 HPS Credit Facility, the Company issued warrants ("HPS Warrants") to affiliates of HPS Investment Partners, LLC exercisable at any time into an aggregate of 3,889,575 shares of the Company's Class A common stock, which amounted to 1% of the Company's total outstanding Class A and Class B common stock, including the HPS Warrants, as of the closing date of the 2020 HPS Credit Facility, at an exercise price of $7.11 per share, payable in cash or pursuant to a cashless exercise. The HPS Warrants were recorded at their initial fair value of $17,620 and included within stockholders' equity (deficit). The termination and payoff of the 2020 HPS Credit Facility did not impact the HPS Warrants.

Future Maturities

Annual future maturities of long-term debt, excluding unamortized financing costs, are as follows at December 31, 2022:

	2022 HPS Credit Facility	2026 Convertible Senior Notes	Total
2023	$ —	$ —	$ —
2024	—	—	—
2025	126,388	—	126,388
2026	—	747,500	747,500
Total	$ 126,388	$ 747,500	$ 873,888

Note 11—Noncontrolling Interests

SDC Inc. is the sole managing member of SDC Financial, and consolidates the financial results of SDC Financial. Therefore, SDC Inc. reports a noncontrolling interest based on the common units of SDC Financial held by the Continuing LLC Members. Changes in SDC Inc.'s ownership interest in SDC Financial, while SDC Inc. retains its controlling interest in SDC Financial, are accounted for as equity transactions. As such, future redemptions or direct exchanges of LLC Units by the Continuing LLC Members will result in a change in ownership and reduce or increase the amount recorded as noncontrolling interest and increase or decrease additional paid-in capital when SDC Financial has positive or negative net assets, respectively. As of December 31, 2022, SDC Inc. had 124,785,562 shares of Class A common stock outstanding, which

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

resulted in an equivalent amount of ownership of LLC Units by SDC Inc. As of December 31, 2022, SDC Inc. had a 31.7% economic ownership interest in SDC Financial.

Note 12—Variable Interest Entities

Upon completion of the IPO, SDC Inc. became the managing member of SDC Financial with 100% of the management and voting power in SDC Financial. In its capacity as managing member, SDC Inc. has the sole authority to make decisions on behalf of SDC Financial and bind SDC Financial to signed agreements. Further, SDC Financial maintains separate capital accounts for its investors as a mechanism for tracking earnings and subsequent distribution rights. Accordingly, management concluded that SDC Financial is determined to be a limited partnership or similar legal entity as contemplated in ASC 810.

Furthermore, management concluded that SDC Inc. is SDC Financial's primary beneficiary. As the primary beneficiary, SDC Inc. consolidates the results of SDC Financial for financial reporting purposes under the variable interest consolidation model guidance in ASC 810.

SDC Inc.'s relationship with SDC Financial results in no recourse to the general credit of SDC Inc. SDC Financial and its consolidated subsidiaries represents SDC Inc.'s sole investment. SDC Inc. shares in the income and losses of SDC Financial in direct proportion to SDC Inc.'s ownership percentage. Further, SDC Inc. has no contractual requirement to provide financial support to SDC Financial.

SDC Inc.'s financial position, performance and cash flows effectively represent those of SDC Financial as of and for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021. Prior to the IPO and Reorganization Transactions, SDC Inc. was not impacted by SDC Financial.

Note 13—Incentive Compensation Plans

In connection with the IPO, the Company adopted the 2019 Omnibus Incentive Compensation Plan (the "2019 Plan") in August 2019. The Company's board of directors or the compensation committee of the board of directors, acting as plan administrator, administers the 2019 Plan and the awards granted under it. The Company reserved a total of 38,486,295 shares of Class A common stock for issuance pursuant to the 2019 Plan. The Company currently has two types of share-based compensation awards outstanding under the 2019 Plan: Class A common stock options ("Options") and Class A restricted stock units ("RSUs"), including those issued pursuant to IBAs.

Class A Common Stock Options

Options activity was as follows during the year ended December 31, 2022:

	Number of Options	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term (Number of Years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value
Outstanding at December 31, 2021	1,664,122	$ 22.70	7.7	$ —
Granted	—	—	—	—
Exercised	—	—	—	—
Expired	—	—	—	—
Forfeited	(276,631)	23.00	—	—
Outstanding at December 31, 2022	1,387,491	$ 22.91	6.6	$ —
Exercisable at December 31, 2022	1,387,491	$ 22.91	6.6	$ —

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

The Company estimates fair value of the Options using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. There were no grants during the year ended December 31, 2022.

Restricted Stock Units

Incentive Bonus Awards

The Company has IBA agreements with several key employees to provide a bonus payment in the event of a liquidation event as defined in each agreement. The bonus amounts are calculated based on the value of the Company at the time of the liquidation event, less an amount determined upon the employee entering into the agreement. The right to the payment generally vests annually over a five-year period, with certain liquidation events resulting in an acceleration of the vesting period. As the vesting of these awards was contingent on a liquidation event, no amounts were required to be recorded prior to a liquidation event. The IBA agreements were modified in August 2019 to accelerate certain vesting conditions upon a liquidation event and to modify the settlement terms, whereby the Company settled the vested portion of each IBA in 50% shares of Class A common stock and/or vested RSUs and 50% cash, of which approximately 80% of the cash (40% of the total vested portion of the award) that the IBA holders would have otherwise received was withheld by the Company to fulfill tax withholding obligations and the remainder was paid out to IBA holders upon the occurrence of a liquidation event. As a result of the modification and the occurrence of a liquidation event through the IPO, the Company recorded equity-based compensation expense of $316,959, equivalent to the amount of IBAs vested at the time of the IPO, in the form of cash, 5,654,078 shares of Class A common stock and 2,199,453 vested RSUs which were released over a period of six to twenty-four months following the date of the IPO. The unvested portion of the IBAs is represented in the form of unvested RSUs that will vest, subject to the holders' continued employment, over a period generally ranging from 2 years to 4 years.

Non-IBA Restricted Stock Units

The Company granted RSUs to certain team members that generally vest annually over two to four years or after four years from the date of grant, subject to the recipient's continued employment or service to the Company through each vesting date.

A summary of activity related to these RSUs is as follows:

	RSUs	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
RSUs outstanding, December 31, 2021	4,837,161	$ 15.53
Granted	29,333,175	2.15
Vested	(1,697,096)	12.54
Forfeited	(5,341,409)	4.32
RSUs outstanding, December 31, 2022	27,131,831	$ 2.63

During the year ended December 31, 2021, there were 4,333,642 shares of RSUs granted with a weighted-average fair value of $11.00 per share. During the year ended December 31, 2020, there were 1,900,605 shares of RSUs granted with a weighted-average fair value of $9.07 per share. As of December 31, 2022, unrecognized RSUs compensation expense was $53,709. This expense is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 2.7 years.

Employee Stock Purchase Plan

The SmileDirectClub, Inc. team member Stock Purchase Plan ("SPP") was initiated in November 2019. Under the SPP, the Company is authorized to issue up to 5,772,944 shares of its Class A common stock to qualifying employees. Eligible team members may direct the Company, during each six months option period, to withhold up to 30% of their base salary and commissions, the proceeds from which are used to purchase shares of Class A common stock at a price equal to the lesser of 85% of the closing market price on the exercise date or the grant date. For accounting purposes, the SPP is considered a

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

compensatory plan such that the Company recognizes equity-based compensation expense based on the fair value of the options held by the employees to purchase the Company's shares.

Summary of Equity-Based Compensation Expense

The Company recognized compensation expense of $26,608, $44,628 and $44,903 for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, respectively. Amounts are included in general and administrative expense on the consolidated statements of operations.

Note 14—Earnings (Loss) Per Share

Basic earnings per share of Class A common stock is computed by dividing net loss attributable to SDC Inc. by the weighted-average number of shares of Class A common stock outstanding during the period. Diluted earnings per share of Class A common stock is computed by dividing net loss attributable to SDC Inc., adjusted for the assumed exchange of all potentially dilutive LLC Units for Class A common stock, by the weighted-average number of shares of Class A common stock outstanding adjusted to give effect to potentially dilutive elements.

The following table sets forth reconciliations of the numerators and denominators used to compute basic and diluted earnings (loss) per share of Class A common stock:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	**2021**	**2020**
Numerator:			
Net loss	$ (277,853)	$ (335,650)	$ (278,499)
Less: Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interests	(191,449)	(233,208)	(200,133)
Net loss attributable to SDC Inc. - basic	(86,404)	(102,442)	(78,366)
Add: Reallocation of net loss attributable to noncontrolling interests from the assumed exchange of LLC Units for Class A common stock	(191,449)	(233,208)	(200,133)
Net loss attributable to SDC Inc. - diluted	$ (277,853)	$ (335,650)	$ (278,499)
Denominator:			
Weighted average shares of Class A common stock outstanding - basic	121,312,580	118,360,801	109,854,360
Add: Dilutive effects as shown separately below			
LLC Units that are exchangeable for Class A common stock	268,898,405	269,415,089	275,346,082
Weighted average shares of Class A common stock outstanding - diluted	390,210,985	387,775,890	385,200,442
Earnings (loss) per share of Class A common stock outstanding - basic	$ (0.71)	$ (0.87)	$ (0.71)
Earnings (loss) per share of Class A common stock outstanding - diluted	$ (0.71)	$ (0.87)	$ (0.72)

Shares of the Company's Class B common stock do not participate in the earnings or losses of the Company and are therefore not participating securities. As such, separate presentation of basic and diluted earnings (loss) per share of Class B common stock under the two-class method has not been presented.

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

Due to their anti-dilutive effect, the following securities have been excluded from diluted net earnings (loss) per share in the periods presented:

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
Options	1,387,491	1,664,122	1,679,339
Restricted Stock Units	27,131,831	4,837,161	3,819,882
Warrants	3,889,575	3,889,575	3,889,575
Shares issuable under the Notes (if converted method)[1]	41,389,822	41,389,822	—

(1) In connection with the issuance of the Notes, the Company entered into Capped Call Transactions, which were not included for purposes of calculating the number of diluted shares outstanding, as their effect would have been anti-dilutive. The Capped Call Transactions are expected to reduce the potential dilution to the Company's common stock (or, in the event a conversion of the Notes is settled in cash, to reduce its cash payment obligation) in the event that at the time of conversion of the Notes the Company's common stock price exceeds the conversion price of the Notes.

Note 15—Employee Benefit Plans

The Company has a defined contribution retirement plan under Section 401(k) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, that covers substantially all U.S. employees who meet minimum age and service requirements and allows participants to defer a portion of their annual compensation on a pre-tax basis. For the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, the Company matched 100% of employees' salary deferral contributions up to 3% and 50% of employees' salary deferral contributions from 3% to 5% of employees' eligible compensation. The Company contributed $2,900, $3,141 and $3,202 to the 401(k) plan for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, respectively.

Note 16—Related Party Transactions

Products and Services

The Company purchased legal services from a law firm where a partner is an immediate family member of an executive officer and director of the Company. Fees paid for services and costs totaled $7,469, $5,806 and $5,790 for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, respectively.

In February 2020, the Company completed the purchase of a private aircraft from Camelot SI Leasing, LLC, an entity indirectly under common control with Camelot, for $3,400, the appraised value of the aircraft.

Distribution Payable

In August 2019, SDC Financial declared a distribution of $43,400 less any amount determined to be due and payable to Align in connection with the Align arbitration proceedings to the pre-IPO investors. The arbitration proceedings were finalized and this amount plus accrued interest was paid to Align in March 2021.

Note 17—Commitments and Contingencies

Legal Matters

In the ordinary course of conducting its business, the Company is involved, from time to time, in various contractual, product liability, intellectual property, and other claims and disputes incidental to its business. Litigation is subject to many uncertainties, the outcome of individual litigated matters is not predictable with assurance, and it is reasonably possible that some of these matters may be decided unfavorably to the Company and could have a material impact on the financial statements. In addition, the Company periodically receives communications from state and federal regulatory and similar agencies inquiring about the nature of its business activities, licensing of professionals providing services, and similar matters. Such matters are routinely concluded with no financial or operational impact on the Company.

From September to December 2019, a number of purported stockholder class action complaints were filed in the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee and in state courts in Tennessee, Michigan, and New York against the Company, members of the Company's board of directors, certain of its current or former officers, and the underwriters of its IPO. The following complaints have been filed to date: Mancour v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-1169-IV (TN Chancery Court filed 9/27/19), Vang v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19c2316 (TN Circuit Court filed 9/30/19), Fernandez v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19c2371 (TN Circuit Court filed 10/4/19), Wei Wei v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-1254-III (TN Chancery Court filed 10/18/19), Andre v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-cv-12883 (E.D. Mich. filed 10/2/19), Ginsberg v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-cv-09794 (S.D.N.Y. filed 10/23/19), Franchi v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-cv-962 (M.D. Tenn. filed 10/29/19), Nurlybayev v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., 19-177527-CB (Oakland County, MI Circuit Court filed 10/30/19), Sasso v. Katzman, et al., No. 657557/2019 (NY Supreme Court filed 12/18/19), Nurlybayev v. SmileDirectClub, Inc., No. 652603/2020 (Supreme Ct. N.Y. Cty. filed June 19, 2020). The complaints all allege, among other things, that the registration statement filed with the SEC on August 16, 2019, and accompanying amendments, and the Prospectus filed with the SEC on September 13, 2019, in connection with the Company's initial public offering were inaccurate and misleading, contained untrue statements of material facts, omitted to state other facts necessary to make the statements made not misleading, and omitted to state material facts required to be stated therein. The complaints seek unspecified money damages, other equitable relief, and attorneys' fees and costs. All the actions are in the preliminary stages. The Company denies any alleged wrongdoing and is vigorously defending against these actions.

In December 2019, the Fernandez, Vang, Mancour and Wei Wei actions were consolidated and re-captioned In re SmileDirectClub, Inc. Securities Litigation, 19-1169-IV (Davidson County, TN Chancery Court). Plaintiffs filed a consolidated amended complaint on December 20, 2019, and Defendants moved to stay or dismiss the action on February 10, 2020. On June 4, 2020, the court denied that motion. Defendants subsequently moved for permission to seek an interlocutory appeal of that decision. On June 22, 2020, the court granted that motion. On August 3, 2020, Defendants filed an application for interlocutory appeal with the court of appeals, which was denied. On September 21, 2020, Defendants filed an application for interlocutory appeal with the Tennessee Supreme Court, which was denied. On October 2, 2020, Plaintiffs moved for class certification, which Defendants opposed on January 25, 2021. On April 28, 2021, the court ruled in favor of the Plaintiffs class certification. The Company filed its notice of appeal on May 4, 2021. That appeal was fully briefed as of October 6, 2021. All trial court proceedings are stayed during the pendency of the appeal. On March 18, 2022, the Tennessee Court of Appeals dismissed the Plaintiff's Section 12(a)(2) claims but affirmed the grant of certification. On October 24, 2022, Plaintiffs in the Franchi action described below moved to intervene in this action, and their motion was denied on December 6, 2022. The case is currently in discovery and the deadline for completion of fact discovery is June 13, 2023.

The Andre and Ginsberg actions were transferred to the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee, where they were consolidated with the Franchi action. Plaintiffs filed a consolidated amended complaint on February 21, 2020, and Defendants moved to dismiss the action on March 23, 2020. That motion remains pending. While that motion was pending, the parties stipulated to allow Plaintiffs to file a further amended complaint, which Plaintiffs filed on March 31, 2021. Defendants' motion to dismiss the new complaint was due on or before May 14, 2021. That motion was fully briefed as of July 19, 2021. On September 30, 2022, the Court denied in part and granted in part Defendants' motion to dismiss. Defendants filed an answer to the second amended complaint on November 14, 2022. The court held an initial case management conference on December 2, 2022. The case is currently in discovery and the deadline for completion of fact discovery is July 10, 2023.

In the Nurlybayev action, on January 10, 2020, the Defendants moved to dismiss or stay the entire action in favor of the related actions pending in Tennessee, which motion was granted and the case was dismissed on February 26, 2020. On June 19, 2020, Plaintiff Nurlybayev filed a substantially similar action in New York state court. On August 21, 2020, Defendants filed a motion to dismiss that action, which the Court granted on May 25, 2021. On January 31, 2022, Plaintiff filed a notice of appeal. On March 2, 2022, we filed our opposition. Plaintiff filed their reply brief on March 11, 2022. On April 5, 2022, the Court heard argument on the appeal and on May 25, 2022 the Court of Appeals granted our motion to dismiss. Plaintiff filed a notice of appeal, perfected his appeal on January 21, 2022, and the First Department affirmed dismissal of the action on May 5, 2022.

In the Sasso action, Plaintiff agreed to stay the action pending resolution of any motions to dismiss in any of the related actions. The Court so-ordered the parties' stipulation to that effect on January 22, 2020. On November 4, 2022, and again on February 2, 2023, the parties agreed to extend the stay and will provide an update to the Court on May 3, 2023.

In September 2019, a putative class action on behalf of a consumer and three orthodontists was brought against the Company in the U.S. District Court for the Middle District of Tennessee, Ciccio, et al. v. SmileDirectClub, LLC, et al., Case No. 3:19-cv-00845 (M.D. Tenn.). The Plaintiffs assert claims for breach of warranty, false advertising under the Lanham Act, common law fraud, and various state consumer protection statutes relating to the Company's advertising. Following a proactive voluntary dismissal by the majority of consumer plaintiffs, one consumer has since sought to rejoin the Middle District of Tennessee litigation or, in the alternative, to intervene, which the Court granted. That ruling has been appealed, and the Court stayed the consumer claims pending the appeal. On June 25, 2021, the appellate court reversed the district court and remanded with instructions to order the intervening plaintiff to mandatory binding arbitration. On September 20, 2022, the administrative AAA arbitrator confirmed that the consumer claims are subject to binding arbitration on an individual basis. All remaining consumer claims remain stayed. On October 13, 2021, the Court entered an Amended Scheduling Order, effectively staying merits discovery on the provider plaintiff claims, and setting deadlines of March 30, 2022, to complete class certification fact discovery and September 2, 2022, to complete briefing on motions regarding class certification. Class certification fact discovery was substantially completed on March 30, 2022 with the briefing on class certification currently stayed pending further discovery being sought by the Company. The Company denies any alleged wrongdoing and intends to defend against this action vigorously.

Some state dental boards have established new rules or interpreted existing rules in a manner that limits or restricts the Company's ability to conduct its business as currently conducted in other states or have engaged in conduct so as to otherwise interfere with the Company's ability to conduct its business. We have filed actions in federal court in Alabama, Georgia, and California against the state dental boards in those states, alleging violations by the dental boards of various laws, including the Sherman Act and the Commerce Clause. While a national orthodontic association has filed Amicus Briefs in support of the dental boards in both the Georgia and Alabama litigations and has filed a motion to do the same in California (which motion was denied), the FTC and DOJ filed joint Amicus Briefs in support of the Company in both the Alabama and Georgia matters. Both the Alabama and Georgia matters were then sent to the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals as a result of the dental boards in both states appealing the lower court's decisions. Oral argument before the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals occurred in the Georgia matter on May 20, 2020, and in the Alabama matter on July 8, 2020. The FTC and DOJ participated in oral arguments in support of the Company. The DOJ's antitrust chief presented in the Alabama matter. On August 11, 2020, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals affirmed the Georgia district court's denial of the board members' motion to dismiss. On December 8, 2020, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals voted to have a rehearing en banc. The FTC and DOJ filed an amicus and participated in oral argument that was held on February 23, 2021. On July 20, 2021, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals ruled in the Company's favor, finding that the Georgia Dental Board did not have an interlocutory right of appeal and therefore denied the Georgia Board's appeal. On July 29, 2021, the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals also denied the Alabama Dental Board's appeal. Both cases were remanded to the respective District Courts to proceed accordingly into the discovery phase. The FTC also filed its own complaint against the Alabama Board for violating the Sherman Act, which complaint resulted in the Alabama Dental Board entering into a Consent Order in September 2021 and settling the litigation with the Company in December 2021.

On November 22, 2021, the Georgia Board filed a motion to dismiss in the Northern District of Georgia. On January 6, 2022, a hearing was held on the motion to dismiss. On July 15, 2022, the Court granted the Georgia Board's motion to dismiss without prejudice, allowing the Company to reassert its claims. Briefing on the Company's motion for leave to file its amended Complaint is now complete and oral arguments occurred on November 15, 2022. The California matter was amended, and an order of dismissal was entered on July 7, 2020. The Company filed notice of appeal on July 17, 2020, and the FTC and DOJ filed a joint Amicus Brief in support of the Company. Oral argument was held on July 26, 2021, with the FTC and DOJ arguing in support of the Company at oral argument as well. On March 17, 2022 the 9th Circuit issued its ruling reversing in part and affirming in part the District Court's decision. On April 21, 2022, the 9th Circuit issued an amended opinion adding a footnote indicating that no petitions for panel rehearing or rehearing en banc will be entertained. The parties are currently engaged in discovery, including preparing for mediation, engaging in discovery motions practice,

producing and reviewing documents responsive to requests for production, preparing for depositions, and preparing for expert discovery. The parties will attend mediation on March 8, 2023. Fact discovery is scheduled to close on June 15, 2023.

On July 12, 2021, the Australian Competition & Consumer Commission ("ACCC") filed an Originating Application against SmileDirectClub, LLC and the Company's Australian affiliate SmileDirectClub Aus Pty Ltd. The Originating Application alleges certain misstatements by the Company in connection with the availability of consumers having the ability to have private health care coverage cover a portion of their costs when seeking treatment through the Company's telehealth platform. The Company and the ACCC have settled the matter with the terms of such settlement having been approved by the Court. Pursuant to such approved settlement, the Company will pay a set fine and costs to the ACCC and has implemented a redress program for potentially impacted customers so as to fully resolve the matter.

On August 27, 2020, Align Technology, Inc. filed an arbitration demand against SDC alleging that SDC breached the Amended and Restated Supply Agreement between the parties and SDC, subsequently, filed counterclaims against Align alleging breaches by Align under the Agreement. The arbitration is proceeding in two phases to address the parties' claims. The hearing on the initial phase addressing Align's claims and one of SDC's counterclaims occurred in July 2022 and the second phase of the arbitration addressing the balance of SDC's counter claims hearing occurred in February 2023. Closing briefing schedules and oral argument have not yet been scheduled on the matter. On October 27, 2022, the arbitrator issued an interim award against SDC on certain of Align's claims, specifically stating that it was not final award, and that final award would be issued after the second phase of the arbitration and subsequent proceedings on attorneys' fees, interest, and costs. A final award against SDC in this arbitration could be material to our financial statements. The Company denies the allegations and intends to vigorously defend its position in this arbitration.

On December 5, 2022, the District of Columbia filed a complaint against the Company in the Superior Court of the District of Columbia alleging certain violations of the District of Columbia Consumer Protection Procedures Act. The Company has filed a Motion to Dismiss and briefing on the Motion to Dismiss has been concluded. The Court has not ruled whether oral argument will be heard on this pending motion and no ruling date has been set. The Company denies the allegations and intends to vigorously defend its position in this litigation.

On January 3, 2023, Align Technology, Inc. filed a complaint against the Company and certain of its officers and founders in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California purporting to set forth claims for alleged false advertising in violation of the Lanham Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1125(A); Racketeer & Corrupt Organizations Act, 18 U.S.C. § 1964(c); California Business & Prof. Code, §§ 17200, 17500, et seq.; and Arizona Anti-Racketeering Statute, A.R.S. § 13-2314. The Company denies the allegations and intends to vigorously defend its position in this litigation.

Tax Receivable Agreement

As described in Note 9, the Company is a party to the Tax Receivable Agreement pursuant to which SDC Inc. is contractually committed to pay the Continuing LLC Members 85% of the amount of any tax benefits that SDC Inc. actually realizes, or in some cases is deemed to realize, as a result of certain transactions. The Company is not obligated to make any payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement ("TRA") until the tax benefits associated with the transactions that gave rise to the payments are realized. TRA Payments are contingent upon, among other things, (i) generation of future taxable income over the term of the Tax Receivable Agreement and (ii) future changes in tax laws. If the Company does not generate sufficient taxable income in the aggregate over the term of the Tax Receivable Agreement to utilize the tax benefits, then it will not be required to make the related TRA Payments. During the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, the Company recognized no liabilities relating to its obligations under the Tax Receivable Agreement, after concluding that it was not probable that the Company would have sufficient future taxable income over the term of the Tax Receivable Agreement to utilize the related tax benefits. There were no transactions subject to the Tax Receivable Agreement for which the Company recognized the related liability, as the Company concluded that it would not have sufficient future taxable income to utilize all of the related tax benefits.

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

Other Tax Matters

We operate in numerous jurisdictions in which taxing authorities may challenge our position with respect to income and non-income-based taxes. We routinely receive inquiries and may also from time to time receive challenges or assessments from these taxing authorities. With respect to non-income-based taxes, we recognize liabilities when we believe it is probable that amounts will be owed to the taxing authorities and such amounts are estimable. For example, in most countries we charge and remit Value Added Tax ("VAT") when procuring goods and services, or providing services, within the normal course of business. VAT receivables are established in jurisdictions where input VAT exceeds output VAT and are recoverable through the filing of refund claims. These receivables have inherent audit and collection risks unique to the specific jurisdictions that evaluate our refund claims. We have received a challenge from a non-U.S. taxing authority for VAT related to certain sales made and services provided by certain of the Company's subsidiaries. The Company believes these transactions are exempt from VAT and has filed legal actions challenging the taxing authority's application of VAT to them. Discussions on these matters are ongoing. The Company believes its interpretation of these VAT rules is appropriate, and that it will be successful in its challenge against the taxing authority's assessments. Accordingly, the Company does not believe it is probable that it will incur a loss related to these matters. However, the interpretation and application of these VAT rules is an unsettled issue, and the resolution of tax and regulatory matters is unpredictable. If it is determined in these proceedings that VAT applies to some or all of these various transactions, the Company could incur a charge that ranges between zero and $29,900 for these matters, including any interest and penalties associated with these matters and the amount, if any, of VAT the Company might subsequently recover related to its input costs.

Note 18—Segment Reporting

The Company provides aligner products. The Company's chief operating decision maker ("CODM") views the operations and manages the business primarily on a consolidated basis, however, the CODM regularly evaluates, monitors, and makes operational decisions based on the results of operations segmented between North America (defined as the U.S. and Canada) and Rest of World. For the year ended December 31, 2022, approximately 83.9% of the Company's revenues were generated by sales within North America, and substantially all of its net property, plant and equipment was within North America. Below are the tabular results of operations summarized at the revenue and operating loss level for North America and the Rest of World for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020.

	Year Ended December 31, 2022		
	North America	**Rest of World**	**Total**
Revenue	$ 395,076	$ 75,667	$ 470,743
Net loss before provision for income tax expense (benefit)	$ (211,100)	$ (67,395)	$ (278,495)
Reconciliation of net loss before provision for income tax expense (benefit) to Adjusted EBITDA			
Depreciation and amortization	$ 62,786	$ 11,609	$ 74,395
Interest expense	17,887	74	17,961
Lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived assets	93	1,196	1,289
Restructuring and other related costs	15,041	4,627	19,668
Equity-based compensation	23,026	3,582	26,608
Other non-operating general and administrative losses (gains)	(458)	4,419	3,961
Adjusted EBITDA	$ (92,725)	$ (41,888)	$ (134,613)

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

	Year Ended December 31, 2021		
	North America	Rest of World	Total
Revenue	$ 525,366	$ 112,245	$ 637,611
Net loss before provision for income tax expense (benefit)	$ (236,177)	$ (98,205)	$ (334,382)
Reconciliation of net loss before provision for income tax expense (benefit) to Adjusted EBITDA			
Depreciation and amortization	$ 57,734	$ 12,379	$ 70,113
Interest expense	22,920	234	23,154
Lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived assets	1,301	180	1,481
Restructuring and other related costs	1,323	2,475	3,798
Loss on extinguishment of debt	47,585	46	47,631
Equity-based compensation	37,429	7,199	44,628
Other non-operating general and administrative losses	2,812	7,561	10,373
Adjusted EBITDA	$ (65,073)	$ (68,131)	$ (133,204)

	Year Ended December 31, 2020		
	North America	Rest of World	Total
Revenue	$ 568,775	$ 88,005	$ 656,780
Net loss before provision for income tax expense (benefit)	$ (220,161)	$ (55,216)	$ (275,377)
Reconciliation of net loss before provision for income tax expense (benefit) to Adjusted EBITDA			
Depreciation and amortization	$ 48,119	$ 8,271	$ 56,390
Interest expense	43,844	1,166	45,010
Lease abandonment and impairment of long-lived assets	25,457	—	25,457
Restructuring and other related costs	6,648	386	7,034
Loss on extinguishment of debt	13,781	—	13,781
Equity-based compensation	38,562	6,341	44,903
Other non-operating general and administrative losses (gains)	6,955	(1,237)	5,718
Adjusted EBITDA	$ (36,795)	$ (40,289)	$ (77,084)

Note 19—Supplemental Cash Flow

The supplemental cash flow information comprised of the following for the years ended December 31:

	2022	2021	2020
Interest paid	$ 13,617	$ 18,035	$ 30,900
Income taxes paid	$ 1,224	$ —	$ —
Purchases of property and equipment included in accounts payable	$ 4,955	$ 13,094	$ 11,809

(in thousands, except share/unit data and per share/unit amounts)

Exhibit Index

		Incorporated by Reference			
Exhibit No.	Exhibit Description	Form	File No.	Exhibit	Filing Date
1.1	Distribution Agreement, dated November 7, 2022, by and among SmileDirectClub, Inc., SDC Financial LLC and UBS Securities LLC.	8-K	001-39037	1.1	11/8/2022
3.1	Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of SmileDirectClub, Inc.	8-K	001-39037	3.1	9/17/2019
3.2	Amended and Restated By-laws of SmileDirectClub, Inc.	8-K	001-39037	3.2	9/17/2019
4.1	Voting Agreement by and among David Katzman and the parties named therein	8-K	001-39037	10.3	9/17/2019
4.2	Registration Rights Agreement	S-1/A	333-233315	4.2	9/9/2019
4.3	Description of Common Stock	10-K	001-39037	4.3	3/12/2021
4.4	Form of Warrants to Purchase Class A Common Stock of SmileDirectClub, Inc. issued May 12, 2020.	10-Q	001-39037	4.1	5/15/2020
4.5	Indenture, dated as of February 9, 2021, between SmileDirectClub, Inc. and Wilmington Trust, National Association, as trustee.	8-K	001-39037	4.1	2/10/2021
4.6	Form of certificate representing the 0.00% Convertible Senior Notes due 2026.	8-K	001-39037	4.2	2/10/2021
10.1	Form of Indemnification Agreement for Officers and Directors	S-1/A	333-233315	10.1	9/9/2019
10.2	Seventh Amended and Restated Limited Liability Company Agreement of SDC Financial LLC	8-K	001-39037	10.1	9/17/2019
10.3	Tax Receivable Agreement, by and among SmileDirectClub, Inc. and certain holders described therein	8-K	001-39037	10.2	9/17/2019
10.5	SmileDirectClub, Inc. 2019 Omnibus Incentive Plan	S-8	333-233773	4.1	9/16/2019
10.6	SmileDirectClub, Inc. 2019 Stock Purchase Plan	S-8	333-233773	4.2	9/16/2019
10.7	Form of SmileDirectClub, Inc. Change in Control Severance Agreement	S-1/A	333-233315	10.7	9/9/2019
10.8	Form of SmileDirectClub, Inc. 2019 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan Restricted Stock Unit Grant Notice	S-1	333-233315	10.8	8/16/2019
10.9	Form of SmileDirectClub, Inc. 2019 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan Stock Option Grant Notice	S-1/A	333-233315	10.9	9/9/2019
10.10*	Form of SmileDirectClub, Inc. 2019 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan Restricted Stock Grant Notice				
10.11	Form of Capped Call Confirmation.	8-K	001-39037	10.1	2/10/2021
10.12*	Summary of SmileDirectClub, Inc. Compensation for Non-Employee and Non-Affiliated Directors				
10.13*	SmileDirectClub Inc. 2019 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan Restricted Stock Unit Grant Notice (for Non-Employee and Non-Affiliated Directors)				
10.14	Loan Agreement, dated as of April 27, 2022, by and among SDC U.S. SmilePay SPV, as borrower, SmileDirectClub, LLC, as the seller and servicer, the lenders from time to time party thereto, and HPS Investment Partners, LLC, as administrative agent and collateral agent	8-K	001-39037	10.1	4/28/2022
21.1*	Subsidiaries of Registrant				
23.1*	Consent of Ernst & Young LLP				
24.1	Power of Attorney (Included in Signature Page)				

		Incorporated by Reference
31.1*	Certification of Principal Executive Officer pursuant to Exchange Act Rules 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a), as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002	
31.2*	Certification of Principal Financial Officer pursuant to Exchange Act Rules 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a), as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002	
32.1*†	Certifications of Principal Executive Officer and Principal Financial Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002	
101.INS*	XBRL Instance Document	
101.SCH*	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document	
101.CAL*	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document	
101.DEF*	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document	
101.LAB*	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document	
101.PRE*	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document	

* Filed herewith.

† The certifications attached as Exhibit 32.1 that accompany this Annual Report on Form 10-K are not deemed filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission and are not to be incorporated by reference into any filing of the Registrant under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, whether made before or after the date of this Annual Report on Form 10-K, irrespective of any general incorporation language contained in such filing.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned thereunto duly authorized.

	SMILEDIRECTCLUB, INC.
	(Registrant)
February 28, 2023	*/s/ David Katzman*
Date	David Katzman
	Chief Executive Officer and Director
	(Principal Executive Officer)
February 28, 2023	*/s/ Troy Crawford*
Date	Troy Crawford
	Chief Financial Officer
	(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)

Each of the officers and directors of SmileDirectClub, Inc. whose signature appears below, in so signing, also makes, constitutes and appoints David Katzman and Susan Greenspon Rammelt, his or her true and lawful attorneys-in-fact, with full power and substitution, for him or her in any and all capacities, to execute and cause to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission any and all amendments to the Annual Report on Form 10-K, with exhibits thereto and other documents connected therewith and to perform any acts necessary to be done in order to file such documents, and hereby ratifies and confirms all that said attorney-in-fact or his or her substitute or substitutes may do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

	SMILEDIRECTCLUB, INC. (Registrant)
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ David Katzman* David Katzman Chief Executive Officer and Director (Principal Executive Officer)
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ Troy Crawford* Troy Crawford Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ Steven Katzman* Steven Katzman Chief Operating Officer and Director
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ Jordan Katzman* Jordan Katzman Director
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ Alexander Fenkell* Alexander Fenkell Director
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ Susan Greenspon Rammelt* Susan Greenspon Rammelt Chief Legal Officer, Secretary, and Director
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ Edward W. Ward III* Edward W. Ward III Director
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ Richard F. Wallman* Richard F. Wallman Director
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ Alex Dimitrief* Alex Dimitrief Director
February 28, 2023 Date	*/s/ Linda Marie Williams* Linda Marie Williams Director